

ISBN 978-617-7705-26-9

NATALIYA PROTSYSHYN

INNA LISOVSKA

PRACTICAL COURSE OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

(PART I)

IVANO-FRANKIVSK-2021

**МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ
ДВНЗ «ПРИКАРПАТСЬКИЙ НАЦІОНАЛЬНИЙ
УНІВЕРСИТЕТ ІМЕНІ ВАСИЛЯ СТЕФАНИКА»**

*NATALIYA PROTSYSHYN
INNA LISOVSKA*

**PRACTICAL COURSE OF
THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE
(PART I)**

**Практичний Курс Англійської Мови
(Частина I)
Розроблено для студентів I курсу немовних
спеціальностей**

**Івано-Франківськ
-2021-**

УДК 811.111: (042.3)

ББК 81.2 Англ-я 73

Б-85

Practical Course of the English Language. Part I. [Практичний Курс Англійської Мови. Частина I. Розроблено для студентів I курсу немовних спеціальностей / упоряд. Н.А. Процишин, І. Лісовська]. 2-е вид.; доп. Івано-Франківськ: ТЗОВ ВГЦ «Просвіта», 2021. 180 с. ISBN 978-617-7705-26-9

Друкується за ухвалою Вченої ради Прикарпатського національного університету імені Василя Стефаника
(протокол № 1 від 27 серпня 2010 року)

Навчально-методичний посібник покликаний допомогти студентам засвоїти граматичний та лексичний матеріал, опанувати навичками читання, перекладу та переказу, зв'язного усного та писемного мовлення на заняттях з Практичного курсу англійської мови. Даний посібник складається з 11 уроків основного курсу, кожен з яких містить граматичний матеріал, тексти побутового характеру, тематичну лексику та низку тренувальних вправ. Посібник передбачає 10 текстів для домашнього читання та вправи за ними.

Наприкінці роботи над посібником студенти повинні оволодіти англійським усним та писемним мовленням у межах поданої лексики та граматики.

Посібник розроблено для учителів шкіл, викладачів ЗВО, студентів немовних спеціальностей, а також тих, хто самостійно вивчає англійську мову.

Рецензенти:

Т. М. Котик - доктор педагогічних наук, професор, завідувач кафедри філології та методики початкової освіти Педагогічного інституту Прикарпатського національного університету імені Василя Стефаника;

В. В. Ткачівський - кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент, завідувач кафедри іноземних мов Прикарпатського національного університету імені Василя Стефаника.

© Івано-Франківськ, 2021.
Процишин Н.А.
Лісовська І.

CONTENT

	INTRODUCTION	5
Lesson 1	The Plural of Nouns. Possessive case of Nouns.	6
	MY FAMILY	7
Lesson 2	Present Indefinite Tense. Personal Pronouns.	13
	MY HOME	14
Lesson 3	The Present Continuous Tense. Possessive Pronouns.	22
	THE STREET I LIVE IN	23
Lesson 4	The Past Indefinite Tense. Determiners. Demonstratives.	29
	MY WORKING DAY	30
Lesson 5	The Past Continuous Tense. There is/are.	38
	LEISURE-TIME ACTIVITIES (MY DAYS OFF) AND HOLIDAYS	40
	SPORT AND GAMES	43
	FOOTBALL	48
Lesson 6	Many, Much, Few, Little, Some, A lot of. Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives. The Use of the Indefinite Article.	54
	APPEARANCE AND CHARACTER	58
Lesson 7	The Future Indefinite Tense. Reflexive Pronouns. The Use of the Indefinite Article.	70
	TRAVELLING	75
Lesson 8	The Future Continuous Tense. Відсутність артиклів a/an, the.	87
	OUR UNIVERSITY	89
Lesson 9	The Modal Verbs. The Present Perfect Tense.	96
	MEALS	99
Lesson 10	The Past Perfect Tense. Modal Verbs.	110
	SEASONS AND WEATHER, CLIMATE	112
Lesson 11	Direct Speech. Reported Speech. Linking Words.	125
	KYIV	129
HOME READING		
Text 1.	A BOOK FESTIVAL	140
Text 2.	THE PRINCE'S VALENTINE	144
Text 3.	STUCK IN THE DESERT	147
Text 4.	FOOTBALL	151
Text 5.	DANCING WITH THE DEVIL	154
Text 6.	THREE BLONDE COPS	157
Text 7.	THE POWER OF IMAGINATION	160
Text 8.	WITCHES' LOAVES	163
Text 9.	LOST IN THE POST	166
Text 10.	MY FINANCIAL CAREER	169
	RECOMMENDED LITERATURE	172

INTRODUCTION

Modern condition of Ukraine's international relations, its views on European and World integration make us consider English as an important means of multicultural communication. The main task of a foreign language as a university discipline is to help students acquire skills and abilities of oral and written communication according to needs and aims and social norms of language behaviour in different spheres and situations.

The aim of this handbook is to meet the needs of teachers and students by combining the essentials of successful group management and teaching in a single, easily readable volume. It will help the reader develop into an aware self-critical learner with a sense of self-direction and self-evaluation; enable him/her to study the language and determine and improve an independent personal English speaking style.

The handbook contains 11 units. Each of them covers a certain topic followed by active vocabulary notes, thematic word combinations and the most significant instructional skills and procedures. Points for discussion and a range of practical assignments, suggested at the end of each lesson, will help the instructor check students' understanding of the material.

Many of these assignments offer students homework questions which ask them to work at some projects on their own. These give them an excellent opportunity for reflection and consideration of their future communication. The handbook is designed so that it will help the students and teachers adapt the material presented in it to the university curricula that may differ in the amount of time devoted to the course.

A list of recommended literature will enable the reader to better develop and improve her/his ideas further on. The list also includes Internet addresses of web sites which can give more information on each particular topic under discussion and much more.

As a whole, the handbook provides a coherent curriculum for students' work and may be used in the studying process at universities and colleges as well as a self-study guide for learners.

The handbook is open to recommendations and further improvement.

Authors

Lesson 1

1. Grammar: The Plural of Nouns. Possessive case of Nouns.

The Plural of Nouns

Nouns are made plural by adding:

- **s** to the noun, (*chair – chairs*)
- **es** to nouns ending in **– s, – ss, – x, – ch, – sh, – tch, – z.** (*bus – buses, glass – glasses, fox – foxes, brush – brushes, buzz – buzzes*);
- **ies** to nouns ending in consonant + y (*lady – ladies*) but **– s** to nouns ending in vowel + y (*day – days*);
- **es** to nouns ending in consonant + o (*potato – potatoes*);
- **s** to nouns ending in vowel + o (*studio – studios*), **double o** (*zoo – zoos*), abbreviations (*photograph / photo – photos, autos, kilos, memos*), musical instruments (*piano – pianos*) and proper nouns (*Eskimo – Eskimos*). Some nouns ending in **– o** can take either **– es** or **– s** (*buffaloes/buffalos, mosquitoes/mosquitos, volcanoes/volcanos, zeroes/zeros*);
- **ves** to some nouns ending in **– f/– fe.** (*calf – calves, half – halves, knife – knives, leaf – leaves, self – selves, thief – thieves, wolf – wolves*); (**but:** *belief – beliefs, chief – chiefs, cliff – cliffs, handkerchief – handkerchiefs, hoof – hoofs/hooves, roof – roofs, safe – safes*)

Some nouns of Greek or Latin origin form their plural by adding Greek or Latin suffixes, *basis – bases, crisis – crises, terminus – termini, criterion – criteria, phenomenon – phenomena, stimulus – stimuli, datum – data, medium – media etc.*

Irregular Plurals: *man – men, woman – women, foot – feet, tooth – teeth, louse – lice, mouse – mice, child – children, goose – geese, sheep – sheep, deer – deer, fish – fish, trout – trout, ox – oxen, salmon – salmon, spacecraft – spacecraft, aircraft – aircraft, means – means, species – specie's, hovercraft – hovercraft.*

Compound nouns form their plural by adding **– s/es**:

- to the second noun if the compound consists of two nouns, *ball game – ball games*
- to the noun if the compound consists of an adjective and a noun, *frying pan – frying pans*
- to the first noun if the compound consists of two nouns connected by a preposition or TO THE noun if the compound has **only** one noun, *mother-in-law – mothers-in-law*.
- at the end of the compound if it does not include any nouns, *letdown – letdowns*

Possessive case of Nouns

Possessive case with **'s** or **s'** for people or animals

- singular nouns (person or animal) + 's *the boy's racket, the dog's ears, the queen's limousine*
- regular plural nouns + ' *the passengers' luggage*
- irregular plural nouns not ending in s + 's *the children's toys, the women's magazines*
- compound nouns + 's *my sister-in-law's house*

's after the last of two or more names to show common possession

Kate and Alan's yacht (They own a yacht.)

's after each name to show individual possession *Sonia's and Marisa's yachts (Each owns a yacht.)*

Possessive case with "of" for inanimate things

- **of** + inanimate things or abstract nouns *the windows of a house, the price of success*
- **of** + possessive case/possessive pronouns when there is a determiner (*this, some etc*) before the noun. *Listen to this song of Eric's, (one of Eric's songs), a friend of mine (one of my friends)*

Note: phrases of place + 's (*at the dentist's, the building's entrance*), time or distance expressions +

's/ (*last year's reports, two days' work, a mile's walk*). We can use either 's or of when we talk about:

places or organizations. (*York's monuments or the monuments of York*). We use **of** with people in longer phrases. (*That's the sister of one of my colleagues.*)

2. Read and translate the following text:

MY FAMILY

Before I start talking about my family let me **introduce myself**. I am Sveta Petrenko. I am 17. I **have left school** this year. I was born in Kyiv, so I have been living in Kyiv since my childhood.

And now I am going to tell you about my family. We are a family of five. We think we are a large and friendly family. So we are happy to be living together and are getting on all right.

To begin with, I am going to talk about my father. His name is Sergey Petrovich, he is 45. He works as a **surgeon** at a hospital. He is neither old nor young. He is a good-looking man, **handsome**, rather thin with dark brown hair just beginning to go gray. He is a very **social** person. What I don't like about my dad is that he is always busy. Very often he **works overtime**. He is a **bread-maker** in our family. He **is fond of** going to the country on week-ends, because he enjoys working in the garden

My mother's name is Galina Nickolayevna. She is three years younger than my father. She works as a teacher at a nursery school. My mother is rather **slim** and **pretty**, she is always **elegant** and **smart**. In short she is a pleasant-looking woman of about 40. She always has a lot of work to do both at school and about the house. She is fond of her work and spends a lot of time there. But she has to cook the food for the whole family at home Shopping and cooking is nearly half a day's work for her. But my granny and I **are in a habit of** helping her about the house.

Boris is my elder brother. He is six years **senior** to me. So he is 23 already He **has graduated from the University** and he is an economist by profession now. Boris **is married**. His wife is a journalist. They are three in the family I hey have got a child, my **nephew**. It is a lovely little boy of two with golden hair and dark brown eyes and a spirit that is always bright and happy full of joy and **gaiety**.

And finally a few words about my granny. To tell you the truth, she is my best friend. She always listens to my **endless** stories about my friends and my school life. She **is retired on pension** now but in her youth and her older age she worked as a teacher in a school. I must admit, she is a very understanding person.

3. Word list on the Subject "My Family":

to introduce oneself – *знайомити з кимось*

surgeon – *хірург*

sociable – *комунікабельний*

pretty – *симпатична, вродлива (про жінку)*

slim – *стрункий, зграбний*

to be in (to have) a habit of doing smth. – *мати звичку поратися*

elegant – *елегантний*

to be retired on pension – *бути на пенсії*

to be married – *бути одруженим*

gaiety – *веселість*

junior – *молодший*

to work overtime – *працювати понаднормово*

endless – *нескінченний*

to leave school – *закінчувати школу*

to be fond of – *подобатися, вподобати*

bread-maker – *годувальник*

smart – *добре вдягнений, модний, вишуканий*

senior – *старший, старше*

to graduate from the University – *закінчувати університет*

nephew – *племінник, небіж*

handsome – *вродливий (про чоловіка)*

Relatives by Birth

family – *сім'я*

mother (mum) – *мати*

son – *син*

sister – *сестра*

parents – *батьки*

father (dad) – *батько (тато)*

daughter – *дочка*

brother – *брат*

grandfather – дід
great-grandfather – прадід
grandson – онук
grandparents – дід і баба
uncle – дядько
nephew – племінник, небіж
cousin – двоюрідний брат
(двоюрідна сестра)

grandmother – бабуся
great-grandmother – прабабка
granddaughter – онука
grandchildren – онуки
aunt – дядина
niece – племінниця, небога

Relatives by Marriage

husband – чоловік
father-in-law – тесть, свекор
sister-in-law – зовиця (дружина брата)
brother-in-law – дівер (чоловік сестри)
stepfather – вітчим
adopted child – прийомне дитя
widower – удівець
twins – близнюки
to get married – одружуватися, оженитися
divorcee – розведена, розлучена
descendant – нащадок, потомок
hereditary – родовий, спадковий
progeny – генерація, потомство
one's flesh and blood – родич

wife – дружина
mother-in-law – теща, свекруха
daughter-in-law – невістка (дружина сина)
to be married – бути одруженим (одруженою)
stepmother – мачуха
orphan – сирота
widow – удовиця
son-in-law – зять (чоловік дочки)
divorce – розлучення, розлука; розведений, розлучений
single – неодружений, незаміжня
direct descendant – прямий нащадок
heir – спадкоємець
relatives – родичі

4. Write a letter to your relative in the USA telling him/ her how your family is.

Exercise 5. (based on the topic "My Family"). Fill in the missing words:

1. I was born _____.
2. We are a family of _____.
3. We are happy to be living together and _____ all right.
4. My father is a very _____ person.
5. My father often works _____.
6. He is a _____ in our family.
7. My mother is rather _____ and _____, she is always elegant and smart.
8. She is a _____ woman of about 40.
9. She is _____ her work and always spends a lot of time there.
10. Shopping and _____ is nearly half a day's work for her.
11. I have a habit of _____ her about the house.
12. Boris is my _____ brother.

13. He has already _____ the University.
14. They have got a child, my _____.
15. It is a lovely little child of two with _____ hair and dark blue eyes.
16. My granny always listens to my _____ stories about my school life.
17. She is _____ on pension.
18. I must admit, she is a very _____ person.
19. Put it into a few words, we are a _____ and friendly family.

Exercise 6. Write the plural of the following nouns:

nanny	_____	father-in-law	_____
headache	_____	dictionary	_____
bush	_____	pen-friend	_____
video	_____	pillowcase	_____
violin	_____	wife	_____
volcano	_____	mouse	_____
godfather	_____	wish	_____
watch	_____	ferryboat	_____
bay	_____	medium	_____
taxi-driver	_____	flamingo	_____
safe	_____	potato	_____
walking-tick	_____	onlooker	_____

Exercise 7. Ask and answer questions. Use contracted forms where possible. Work in pairs:

Model 1: *What's his name? – (It's) Benny.*

1. What's your name?
2. What's your mother's name?
3. What's her nephew's name?
4. What is her sister's name?
5. Is "Benny" a boy's or a girl's name?
6. What's your school-mate's (girl-friend's, boy-friend's) name?
7. What's Betty's full name?

Model 2: *Has your brother a large family? – Yes, (he has). No, (he hasn't).*

1. Has Betty Smith a large family?
2. Have you a large family?
3. Has your cousin a brother (father, mother, friend, wife, parents, grandfather)?
4. Has Benny got a hedgehog?
5. Has Benny got a rabbit?
6. Have you got a dog in the house?
7. Has Benny friends?
8. Has Benny books (toys, pens, pencils)?

Exercise 8. Change the given groups of words as in the model:

Model: *the room of my sister – my sister's room*
the friends of my sisters – my sisters' friends.

1. the brother of my mother;
2. the friend of my sister;
3. the husband of his daughter;
4. the house of my parents;
5. the table of my father;
6. the work of my mother;
7. the notebook of this student;
8. the books of these students;
9. the sister of my friend;
10. the friend of our cousin;
11. the photo of my grandfather;
12. the room of Pete;
13. the son of her brother;
14. the daughter of Ann;
15. the sister of my mother.

asking the waiter to bring us some 4) _____ (glass) and when he gave us our 5) _____ (knife) and 6) _____ (fork), they were dirty. We were informed that not all the 7) _____ (dish) were available that evening and, when we did receive our food, the 8) _____ (potato) were raw and the meat was so tough I nearly broke my 9) _____ (tooth) when I bit into it. However, that was nothing! The real horror was when I saw two 10) _____ (mouse) running across the floor. I think I'm entitled to some compensation as long as it doesn't include free 11) _____ (meal) at your restaurant! I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,
M. Bennet

Exercise 13. Translate the sentences:

1. Того дня чотири покоління родини зібралися за святковим столом – прадід та прабабуся святкували своє золоте весілля. 2. Вона має невеличку, але дуже дружну родину. 3. Дядько Сема – відомий адвокат. У нього бездоганна репутація. 4. Бабусі завжди люблять своїх онуків, готують для них смачні страви або плетуть теплі шкарпетки та рукавички. 5. Батьки мого чоловіка мають грецьке походження. 6. Його мачуха успішно керує будівельною фірмою. 7. Цього року її племінник йде до школи. 8. До чотирьох років вона жила у дитячому будинку, а потім її удочерили. 9. Том народився у родині відомого архітектора. 10. Ці близнюки схожі, як дві краплини води. 11. У якому віці у вашій країні йдуть на пенсію? 12. Наша компанія розширюється, тому ми потребуємо більше досвідчених бухгалтерів. 13. Моя тітка все життя працює секретаркою. 14. Хіба названі діти не хочуть знати, хто їхні справжні батьки? 15. Племінниця моєї дружини скоро закінчує школу. 16. Мені подобається наш район: тут є і булочна, і м'ясний магазин, і навіть універсам. 17. Її старший син відвідує курси німецької мови в університеті. 18. Ще його пращури були фермерами, тому він добре знає, що на фермі працюють з ранку до вечора. 19. Невістка Гелен – дуже вправна господиня. В неї вистачає часу, аби готувати смачну їжу, прибирати дім, прати, прасувати, допомагати дітям з домашнім завданням, вона навіть вишиває. 20. Усі члени цієї родини мають власні обов'язки по дому. 21. Її зять – дослідник, а тому він часто бере участь у роботі різноманітних конференцій. 22. Якщо хочеш стати дизайнером, тобі мало лише мати талант, слід ще й довго та наполегливо вчитися. 23. Чому твоя двоюрідна сестра продала свій магазин модного одягу? 24. Якщо ти впораєшся з цією заплутаною справою, отримаєш підвищення. 25. Для всіх було несподіванкою, коли цей 43-й річний парубок одружився з 25-річною вдовою з трійнятами. 26. Кажуть, шлюб з розрахунку може бути щасливим, якщо розрахунок є вірним.

Lesson 2

1. Grammar: Present Indefinite Tense. Personal Pronouns.

Стверджувальна форма

I You We They	play	tennis volleyball football	every day.
He She It	plays		

Заперечна форма

I You We They	do not don't	play	tennis volleyball football	every day.
He She It	does not doesn't			

Питальна форма

Do	I you we they	play	tennis volleyball football	every day?
Does	he she it			

Короткі відповіді на загальні запитання:

Do you / they play tennis every day?

Yes, I / they do.

No, I / they do not / don't.

Does he / she play tennis every day?

Yes, he / she does.

No, he / she does not / doesn't.

Питально-заперечна форма Present Simple утворюється за допомогою частки **not**, яка ставиться в питальному реченні після підмета перед повнозначним дієсловом:

*Do you **not** play tennis?*

Хіба ти не граєш в теніс?

Does he not play football? Хіба він не грає у футбол?

У розмовних формах частка **not** поєднується з допоміжним дієсловом:

Don't you play tennis? Doesn't he play football?

«Слова-підказки»: *never, seldom, rarely, not often, sometimes, occasionally, often, frequently, usually, always, every day/ week/ month/ year*

The verb *to be* in the present indefinite tense

I am You are He (she) is	(not)	a doctor, a student, a pupil.	We You They	are (not)	doctors. students. pupils.
Am I Are you Is he (she)		a doctor? a student? a pupil?	Are	we you they	doctors? students? pupils?

Personal Pronouns

Число (Number)	Особа (Person)	Рід (Gender)	Відмінок (Case)	
			Називний (Nominative)	Об'єктний (Objective)
Однина (Singular)	Перша		<i>I</i> – я	<i>me</i> – мене, мені
	Друга		<i>you</i> – ти	<i>you</i> – тебе, тобі
	Третя	Чол.	<i>he</i> – він	<i>him</i> – його, йому
		Жін.	<i>she</i> – вона	<i>her</i> – її, їй
Сер.		<i>it</i> – він, вона, воно	<i>it</i> – його, йому, її, їй	
Множина (Plural)	Перша		<i>we</i> – ми	<i>us</i> – нас, нам
	Друга		<i>you</i> – ви	<i>you</i> – вас, вам
	Третя		<i>they</i> – вони	<i>them</i> – їх, їм

2. Read and translate the text:

MY HOME

I would like to tell you a few words about my home. To begin with, I want to tell you that I live in Kyiv, one of the largest and oldest cities of Europe. It is one of the most ancient cities located on the picturesque banks of the Dnieper River.

Our family lives in a new flat in one of the largest newly built residential areas. We **moved into** our flat seven years ago. It is a three-room flat on the fifth floor of an eight-storeyed building. It **consists of** a **living-room**, a **study**, a

bedroom, a **kitchen**, a **bathroom**, two **closets** and a **lavatory**. There are two **balconies** in our flat: the first one is in the living room, and the second – in the bedroom. Our flat has all **modern conveniences: central heating**, running cold and hot water, electricity, telephone and gas. Besides, there is a lift and a **garbage disposal** in our building. The layout is very good, I must admit. The rooms are light, though not very large. In my opinion, it's quite a modern-looking flat. The windows face the park in front of the building and the **view** is really wonderful.

Our living-room is quite a big room of about 19 square metres. It is the largest room in our flat. My parents don't like much **furniture** in the house, so in the living-room there are two comfortable **armchairs** and a **sofa**, a coffee-table and a nice thick **carpet** on the floor. Opposite the window there is a **wall unit**, but it doesn't take much space in the room. Of course there is a TV set, a **stereo CD-player** and a record-player in the living-room. A nice chandelier is hanging from the ceiling and there is a standard lamp to the left of the sofa. During the day, the light comes in through the window, but at night when it gets dark, we switch on the light and draw the curtains across the windows. We like to receive our guests in this room.

Now I would like to describe our study. At first it was my daddy's room, but as I grew older, it became mine. To tell you the truth, I am very happy to have a room for myself, that's why I always try to keep it tidy and cosy. There is a sofa, a writing table, a **bookcase**, a **wardrobe** in my room. On the wall there are some shelves full of English, Ukrainian and Russian books. There is a radio set on the shelf and, I must confess, I like to listen to the wireless in the evening. The dressing-table is next to the sofa. In the **chest of drawers** I keep clean linen and handkerchiefs and in the wardrobe I keep my clothes, which I hang on coat-hangers. I have two water-colours on the wall above the sofa. They are nice copies of my favourite paintings by Serov.

Our bedroom is the smallest room in our flat. At night when my parents feel tired and sleepy, they share this room.

But the most popular and favourite place with all of us is the kitchen, as we spend most of our time there. We all are not big-eaters, but use the kitchen as a place where we can have a chat about our problems and life.

In the kitchen there are some stools, a table, a cupboard, a **sink** with water taps, a fridge and a **gas cooker**. Of course, we usually have our meals there.

We like our flat very much. It is important that our house is rather close to the

underground station and we can easily get to any place we like.

3. Word list on the Subject "My Home":

to move into – *переїжджати, в'їжджати*

living-room – *житлова кімната*

bedroom – *спальня*

bathroom – *ванна кімната*

lavatory (toilet) – *туалет*

modern conveniences – *сучасні зручності*

garbage disposal – *сміттєпровід*

furniture – *меблі*

sofa – *канана*

wall unit – *меблі «стінка»*

to consist of – *складатися з*

wardrobe – *шафа*

sink – *раковина*

stereo CD-player – *стерео CD програвач*

study – *кабінет*

kitchen – *кухня і*

closet – *комора, стінна шафа*

balcony – *балкон*

central heating – *центральне опалювання*

view – *вигляд*

armchair – *крісло*

carpet – *килим*

space – *простір*

bookcase – *книжкова шафа*

chest of drawers – *комод*

gas cooker – *газова плита*

Hall (Entrance Hall)

[coat] rack – *вішалка*

[coat] hanger – *плічки*

to go downstairs – *спускатися сходами*

principal staircase – *центральні сходи*

doorway – *вхід до приміщення*

doorstep – *пориг*

backdoor – *задні двері*

doorbell (doorknob) – *дзвоник*

spyhole – *вічко*

mirror – *дзеркало*

lift (elevator) – *ліфт*

chimney – *труба, комин*

drainpipe – *каналізаційна труба*

shutter – *віконниці*

[coat] hook – *гачок*

stair – *сходи*

to go upstairs – *підніматися сходами*

doormat – *постілка (на порозі дверей)*

door plate – *табличка на дверях*

key – *ключ*

sidedoor – *бічні двері*

door-handle – *ручка дверей*

dressing table – *тумбочка*

window sill – *підвіконня*

garage – *гараж*

antenna – *антена*

porch – *танок*

roof – *покрівля, дах*

Living-Room

coffee table (low table) – *журнальний стілець*

lampshade – *абажур*

curtain – *фіранка*

ash-tray – *попільничка*

chandelier – *люстра*

planter, flower pot – *горщик для квітів*

standard lamp – *торшер*

net curtain – *тюль*

fitted carpet – *килимове покриття*

drape – *порт'єра*

Dining-Room

fork – виделка	knife – ніж
spoon – ложка	coffee spoon – кавова ложка
teaspoon – чайна ложка	soup-spoon – супова ложка
carving-knife – ніж для накраювання м'яса	thumbler – висока склянка (фужер) без ніжки
bowl – глибока тарілка	plate – тарілка
cup – чашка	saucer – блюдце
tablecloth, tablemat – [невелика] скатертину	napkin – серветка
tray – таця	carafe – карафа
goblet – бокал	cutlery – ножові вироби
china – порцеляновий посуд	crockery – фаянсовий посуд
glass – склянка	

Bedroom (Bedchamber)

night table – нічний стілець	bed, bedstead – ліжко
bed-spread – покривало на ліжко	pillow – подушка
pillowcase – пошивка, пошиванка	sheet – простирадло
blanket – ковдра	eiderdown – пухова ковдра
blanket cover, blanket slip – підковдра	roll-away bed – розкладашка, розкладачка

Bathroom and Toilet

bath-tub – ванна	tap – кран
mixer tap – кран-змішувач	diverter – перемикач на душ
drain plug – затичка для ванни	sink, washbasin – раковина
toothbrush – зубна щітка	toothpaste – зубна паста
soap – мило	soap dish – мильниця
sponge – манула, мочалка	razor – бритва, лезо
towel – рушник	cistern – бачок
toilet – унітаз	

Kitchen

gas (electric) cooker – газова (електрична) плита	can (tin, bottle) opener – ключ для відкривання бляшанок
stove – піч, кухонна плита	burner – конфорка
cooker hood – витяжка	pot holder – рогац
cutting board – обробна дошка	frying pan – сковорода, пательня
pot – горщик, каструля	kettle – чайник
coffee-pot – кавник	salt-cellar – сільниця
pepper-box – перечниця	cruet-stand – судок
jug – глек, глечик	mug – кружка
mixer – міксер	mincer – м'ясорубка
sauceman – каструля	toaster – тостер

microwave oven – мікрохвильова піч

matches – сірники

ladle – розливна ложка

cake tin – форма для випічки кексу

nut crakers – горіходавка

baking sheet – лист, деко

coffee maker – кавоварка

whisk – вінце

sieve – решето

spatula – лопатка

oven – піч

dishwasher – машина для миття посуду

bread bin – хлібниця

strainer – сито, підситок

lid, coker – кришка

garlic press – часникодавка

sugar basin – цукорниця

thermos – термос

grater – тертка, тертушка

skimmer – шумівка

peeler – ніж для зняття шкірки

cork-screw – штопор

Household Objects

vacuum cleaner – пилосос

washing line, clothesline – мотузка для білизни

brush – щітка

dust pan – совок

hair drier – фен

socket – розетка

sweeper – віник

clothespin – заціпка

air conditioner – кондиціонер

iron – утюг, праска

washing machine, washer – пральна машина

mop – швабра

light bulb – лампочка

plug-switch – штепсельний вимикач

bucket – відро, цеберка

ironing board – гладильна дошка

refrigerator, fridge – холодильник

lock – замок

4. Discuss the following topics:

- 1) My room.
- 2) The room in my house which I like the most.
- 3) What's better: living in a private house or a flat?

Exercise 5. Answer the following questions:

1. Where do you live? Describe your flat (house).
2. Is there a lift in your block of flats?
3. Which floor is your flat on?
4. What modern conveniences are there in your flat (house)?
5. How many rooms are there in your flat?
6. Which room is the largest one? Describe it.
7. What furniture is there in your living-room?
8. How long have you lived in your house?
9. How many storeys are there in your house?
10. Is there a yard or a park near your house?
11. When did you move into your flat?
12. Do you have a room for yourself?
13. How is your kitchen furnished?
14. Do you like your flat (house)?

Exercise 6. Fill in the missing words (based on the topic "My Home"):

1. Kyiv is one of the most ancient _____ located on the _____ banks of the Dnieper River.
2. Our family lives in a new flat in one of the _____ newly built _____ areas.
3. Our flat has all modern _____: central _____, running cold and hot water, electricity, _____ and gas.
4. The _____ is very good in our building.
5. In my opinion, it's quite a modern- _____ flat.
6. As my parents don't like much furniture in the house so in the living-room there are two _____ armchairs and a sofa, coffee table and a nice _____ carpet on the floor.
7. Opposite the window there is a _____, but it doesn't take much _____ in the room.
8. A nice _____ is hanging from the ceiling and there is a _____ lamp to the left of the sofa.
9. We like _____ our guests in this room.
10. I am very glad to have a room for _____, that's why I always try to keep it _____ and cosy.
11. I like to listen to the _____ in the evening.
12. In the _____ I keep clean linen and handkerchiefs and in the wardrobe I keep my _____ which I hang on the _____.
13. We are not big-eaters, but we use our kitchen as a _____ where we can have a _____ about our problems and life.
14. It is important that our house is rather _____ to the underground station and we can _____ get to any place we like.

Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. Він хороший друг.
2. Мені холодно.
3. Цю книгу передай йому.
4. Запишіть для мене свою адресу.
5. Я можу вам розповісти цікаву історію.
6. Він добре говорить англійською.
7. Поясни це йому.
8. Я написав вчора батькам лист.
9. Ти можеш дати мені свій підручник?
10. Це добре.
11. Учитель говорив гучним голосом.
12. Це ясно.
13. Закрийте книги і слухайте мене.
14. Це дуже легко.

Exercise 8. Use the personal pronouns given in brackets in the Objective Case:

1. Do you know _____ (he)?
2. Who is there? – It's _____ (I).
3. They invite _____ (we) to their party.
4. And do you invite _____ (they)?
5. Ask _____ (she) to come, too.

Exercise 9. Use the required tense instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. My little sister _____ (to go) to school every day. 2. The sun _____ (to rise) in the East. 3. Bad students never _____ (to work) hard. 4. It often _____ (to snow) in winter. 5. He _____ (to wake up) at seven and _____ (to have) breakfast at half past seven. 6. The teacher _____ (to point) at the blackboard when he _____ (to want) to explain something. 7. Mother always _____ (to cook) in the morning. 8. I _____ (to see) what you mean. 9. She _____ (to say), she _____ (to hear) nothing. 10. There _____ (to be) a girl downstairs who _____ (to want) to see you. 11. My friend _____ (to go) there nearly every week.

Exercise 10. Fill in: is or are:

1. Your jeans *are* hanging in the wardrobe.
2. Where _____ my scissors?
3. There _____ a lecture on economics today.
4. The shopping _____ extremely heavy.
5. Where _____ my boxing gloves?
6. This information _____ incorrect!
7. Her hair _____ beautiful.
8. Your socks _____ in the drawer.
9. Her furniture _____ very expensive.
10. His accommodation _____ luxurious.
11. Evidence _____ needed before the trial can continue.
12. The news _____ very exciting.
13. Mumps _____ a common illness among young children.
14. Where _____ my glasses?
15. German _____ difficult to learn.
16. Where _____ the kitchen scales? I want to weigh some flour.
17. Chess _____ a popular game.
18. Her work _____ very tiring.
19. People _____ starving in many countries.
20. Happiness _____ the key to her success.

Exercise 11. Use the required tense form instead of the infinitives in brackets:

Wild geese fly (fly) south for the winter.
The press _____ (be) often unfair to political candidates.
Six months _____ (be) a long time to spend in hospital.
Two miles _____ (be) not a long way to walk to school.
Economics _____ (be) difficult for people with poor maths skills.
American Airlines _____ (be) one of the largest carriers in the United States.
The stairs _____ (be) too steep for me to climb.
Two-thirds of the food produced on the farm _____ (be) used to feed people in that region.
_____ (be) the number of students studying French falling?

Bus trips to and from New York _____ (take) two hours either way.
International news _____ (rely) on correspondents in every major city.
Five pounds _____ (be) quite a lot of money to lose.
In the Philippines, there _____ (be) heavy rains each year.
Two hours per week _____ (be) not enough to learn a foreign language.

Exercise 12. Use the required tense form instead of the infinitives in brackets:

I sometimes think that society 1) throws (throw) away things without even thinking of repairing them. Trousers 2) _____ (be) easy to mend or can be made into shorts which 3) _____ (look) nice on most people. Pliers that 4) _____ (be) broken or scissors that 5) _____ (be) blunt can be fixed or sharpened. Clothes 6) _____ (be) expensive and household goods always 7) _____ (prove) useful so why 8) _____ (be) these belongings often thrown away? Intelligence 9) _____ (be) not really needed, just common sense. Congratulations 10) _____ (be) in order for those who 11) _____ (use) their heads in this way. An old pair of jeans which 12) _____ (be) used for gardening, pyjamas which 13) _____ (become) dishcloths and tights which 14) _____ (strain) food, all make our earnings 15) _____ (go) further.

Exercise 13. Use the prompts below to make more sentences about the three athletes.

For example: *eat/Ann/a healthy diet/always. Ann always eats a healthy diet.*

- a for many hours/all of them/train/every day
- b much money/Ann and Tom/not earn
- c Ann/at 7.00/get up/usually
- d never/before midnight/go to bed/she
- e live in/Tom/a special training camp called a "Heya"
- f on the floor/he/sleep/often
- g lots of fan letters/receive/ every week/he
- h not play/Dan/in every match
- i two sports cars/own/he
- j miss/he/his family in Romania
- k phone/about four times a week/he/his mother.

Exercise 14. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative:

Model: *Mr. White wants to see you.*

Does Mr. White want to see me? No, he doesn't.

1. Mr. White and Betty enter the room. 2. Mr. White wants to see Doctor Sandford. 3. You can sign this paper. 4. I know some of these names. 5. I can do something. 6. The walls of my room are light-green. 7. The most popular and favourite place with all of us is the kitchen. 8. During the day the light comes in through the window. 9. Of course there is a TV set in the living-room. 10. The windows face the park in front of the building.

Lesson 3

1. Grammar: The Present Continuous Tense. Possessive Pronouns.

The Present Continuous Tense

I	am (not)	speaking English writing a letter playing the piano walking fast.
He My cousin Her brother	is (not)	
We You The girls	are (not)	

Is	his wife their friend her mother	working in the garden? writing anything? standing at the window?
Are	the students the children	reading exercises? working in the room?

«Слова-підказки»: *at this moment (time), now, still, from ... to.., all the day, always, constantly.*

Stative verbs express a permanent state rather than an action and do not have continuous forms: *feel, hear, see, smell, taste etc.*

Can or **could** are often used with these verbs: *look, watch and listen* express deliberate actions and can be used in continuous forms. *John is watching a football game on TV. He can't see or hear you.*

Feel and **hurt** can be used in either continuous or simple forms: *John feels/is feeling worse today.*

Verbs of feelings and emotions: *adore, appreciate (= value), detest, dislike, enjoy, forgive, hate, like, loathe etc.* *He hates the show they are watching on TV now. (not: He is hating);* verbs of opinion: *agree, believe, expect (= think), see (= understand), suppose, understand etc.*

I believe he is innocent, (not: I am believing)

Other verbs: *appear (= seem), belong, concern, contain, depend, fit (= be the right shape and size for sth), have (= possess), know, mean, owe, own, possess, need, prefer, require, want, weigh, wish, keep (= continue), seem etc.* *He wants some more biscuits, (not: He is wanting)*

Possessive Pronouns.

Число (Number)	Особа (Person)	Рід (Gender)	Форма		Українські еквіваленти
			Залежна (conjunct)	Незалежна (absolute)	
Однина (Singular)	Перша		<i>my</i>	<i>mine</i>	МІЙ, МОЯ, МОЄ, МОЇ
	Друга		<i>your</i>	<i>yours</i>	ТВІЙ, ТВОЯ, ТВОЄ, ТВОЇ
	Третя	Чоловічий	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	ЙОГО
		Жіночий	<i>her</i>	<i>hers</i>	ЇЇ
		Середній	<i>its</i>	<i>its</i>	ЙОГО, ЇЇ
Множина (Plural)	Перша		<i>our</i>	<i>ours</i>	НАШ, НАША, НАШЕ, НАШІ
	Друга		<i>your</i>	<i>yours</i>	ВАШ, ВАША, ВАШЕ, ВАШІ
	Третя		<i>their</i>	<i>theirs</i>	ЇХНІЙ, ЇХНЯ, ЇХНЕ, ЇХНІ

2. Read and translate the text:

THE STREET I LIVE IN

I live in Sumska Street and I am proud to say that it is one of the oldest and most beautiful streets in Kharkiv. It begins near Constitution Square in the very heart of our city and stretches as far as Gorky Park. It will probably take you more than an hour to walk up or down Sumska from the beginning of the street to its end, especially if you stop to look at some interesting buildings or **drop in** at one of the numerous shops or cafes on its both sides

There are not many buildings in Sumska. Most of them are **two-, three- or four-storeyed houses**, but each of them has a long history and is beautiful and interesting in its own way. Those who like old classical **architecture** enjoy looking at the impressive houses designed by the famous architect Beketov. Others, who prefer modern style, like the new Opera and Ballet House. It is, in fact, a whole complex of theatre halls shops, cafes, clubs, **exhibition halls** under one roof. It is a very popular place both with the citizens of Kharkiv and guests of our city.

Sumska street has always been called in this way as it originated as a road to the town of Sumy. Many outstanding people lived and worked in this street. Kharkiv City Hall is also situated there. The street has greatly changed in the last few years- a lot of old houses have been restored, new shops, cafes, restaurants have appeared, and the street looks bright and busy from early morning till late at night. Most of all I like the old part of the street, from Constitution Square to

Shevchenko Garden. The **traffic** is not very heavy there comparing with the other streets of the city and you can walk along it admiring your old and ever so young Kharkiv.

3. Word list on the Subject “The street I live in”:

industrial estates – індустріальні зони	exhibition halls – виставкові зали
architecture – архітектура	drop in – забігти, заскочити
traffic – рух транспорту	traffic jams – транспортні затори
multi-storeyed houses – багатоповерхові будинки	two-, three- or four storeyed houses – двох, трьох чи чотирьох поверхові будинки

Exercise 4. a) Match the following English words and expressions with their Ukrainian equivalents:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1. village | a) столиця |
| 2. country | b) район |
| 3. settlement | c) невелике місто |
| 4. region | d) держава (штат) |
| 5. district | e) велике місто |
| 6. town | f) країна |
| 7. capital | g) селище |
| 8. metropolis | h) область |
| 9. state | i) село |
| 10. city | j) край |
| 11. province | k) головне місто країни |

b) Rank the words given above according to their size from the smallest to the largest.

Exercise 5. Match the following English words with their Ukrainian equivalents:

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) beds of flowers | a) великий транспортний рух |
| 2) streetlights | b) підземні переходи |
| 3) benches | c) живопліт |
| 4) street lamps | d) бродячі кішки та собаки |
| 5) hedges | e) передмістя |
| 6) heavy traffic | f) окраїна, околиця |
| 7) bushes | g) жилий район |
| 8) stray dogs and cats | h) транспортна пробка |
| 9) underground crossings | i) промисловий район |
| 10) traffic jams | j) клумби |

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| 11) suburbs | к) світлофори |
| 12) outskirts | 1) лавки, лавочки, ослінчики |
| 13) housing estate | м) куці |
| 14) industrial area | п) ліхтарі |

Exercise 6. Choose the correct form of the possessive pronouns in brackets:

1. This is (my, mine) bag. 2. This bag is (my, mine). 3. Is (her, hers) family large or small? 4. (Her, hers) skates are better than (your, yours). 5. Whose hat is this? – It's (my, mine). 6. Is he a friend of (your, yours)? 7. Don't stay at (their, theirs) house; stay at (our, ours). 8. She is in bed in (her, hers) room. 9. (My, mine) pen won't write, please give me (your, yours). 10. She's an old friend of (my, mine). 11. Is this dictionary (my, mine) or (your, yours)? 12. (Her, hers) is the best composition.

Exercise 7. Translate into English using personal and possessive pronouns in the appropriate form:

1. Дай мені на хвилинку твій словник. 2. Скажи це йому, а не мені. 3. Де вона? Я її не бачу. 4. Доктор Сендфорд – його приятель. 5. Що з нею? Вона хвора? 6. Це не мій зошит. Мій у блакитній обкладинці (cover). 7. Їй сьогодні краще. Скажіть про це докторові. 8. Я хочу поговорити з нею. 9. Візьми цю квітку і передай його Бетті. 10. Не питайте нас, запитайте їх. 11. Це поганий олівець. Я не можу ним писати. 12. Не сідайте на цей стілець, у нього зламана ніжка (leg). 13. Моя кімната більша, ніж ваша. 14. Це стара книга; у неї пожовклі (yellow) сторінки (leaves).

Exercise 8. Use the Present Continuous instead of the infinitive in brackets:

1. He (not to work), he (to watch) the TV programme. 2. Kitty (to finish) her porridge. 3. Look, the sun (to rise). 4. John (to polish) his boots and his sister (to press) her dress. 5. It (to rain) ? Yes, it (to rain) very hard. 6. The delegation (to leave) Moscow tomorrow. 7. Somebody (to talk) in the next room. 8. Who (to make) such a noise? 9. What you (to read) now?. I (to read) stories by Maugham. 10. The weather is fine. The sun (to shine) and the birds (to sing). 11. Somebody (to knock) at the door. 12. You (to go) anywhere tonight? 13. Why you (to speak) so fast? You (to make) a lot of mistakes, 14. Go and see what the children (to do). 15. Who you (to wait) for? I (to wait) for my sister. 16. I can't hear what they (to talk) about.

Exercise 9. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. My elder sister (to have) a music lesson. She always (to have) a music lesson on Friday. 2. Who (to sing) in the next room? 3. Father (to read) a newspaper. He usually (to read) something before going to bed. 4. Mother (to cook) breakfast in the kitchen. She always (to cook) in the mornings. 5. Who you (to wait) for? – I (to wait) for Ann, we must leave in ten minutes. 6. It often (to rain) in autumn. 7. Do not go out, it (to rain) heavily. 8. You (to understand) the use of the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous quite well? 9. What you (to write)? You (to make) notes about the two present tenses? 10. Why you (to smile), Kitty? 11. I often (to meet) you at the corner of this street. You (to wait) for anybody? 12. You usually (to go) through the park? – Not usually, it's only today that I (to go) here. 13. You (to hear) anything? – Yes, somebody (to knock) at the door. 14. They still (to discuss) where to go now.

Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the Present Continuous to express an action in the near future:

1. Ми зараз дуже зайняті, оскільки завтра ми виїжджаємо. 2. Літом ми завжди виїжджаємо на дачу. 3. Давайте пройдемо на платформу, потяг прибуває через 5 хвилин. 4. Потяги відправляються і прибувають точно за розкладом (according to schedule). 5. Делегація англійських вчителів прилітає (to arrive by plane) сьогодні увечері до Москви. 6. Іноземні делегації зазвичай прилітають в аеропорт Шереметьєво. 7. Поквапся, останній потяг відходить через декілька хвилин. 8. За розкладом останній потяг до Києва відправляється рівно в 12 годині ночі. 9. Коли мої друзі приїжджають до Івано-Франківська, вони завжди зупиняються у нас. 10. Моя сестра приїжджає в суботу. Я повинна її зустріти. 11. У понеділок я складаю іспит з історії Англії. 12. Студенти складають іспити двічі на рік. 13. Моя подруга влаштовує сьогодні вечір. 14. Коли вони влаштовують вечір, вони зазвичай запрошують всю нашу сім'ю.

Exercise 11. Translate Into English using the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous:

1. Студенти складають іспити. Не шуміть у коридорі. 2. Подивися, як яскраво світить сонце. 3. Ви чуєте шум у коридорі? 4. Почекайте трохи, вони зараз вечеряють. 6. Ви любите дивитися телевизор? 7. Я не розумію: про що вони говорять, оскільки вони говорять дуже тихо. 8. Послухайте! У сусідній кімнаті хтось плаче. 9. Кого ви чекаєте? – Я чекаю свою подругу, 10. Що ти їси? – Я їм яблуко. 11. Осінню птахи відлітають у теплі країни, а навесні повертаються назад. 12. Зараз ми проходимо 12-й урок. 13. Студенти цієї групи часто займаються в лабораторії. 14. Завтра ми йдемо в театр. 15. Маленькі діти їдять 4–5 разів на день. 16. Говорять, що він повертається

завтра.

Exercise 12. Write the interrogative and negative forms of the following sentences:

A. 1. They are having breakfast. 2. Mrs. Smith is putting some cornflakes on the boy's plate. 3. Ann is finishing her cornflakes. 4. Mrs. Smith is passing a plate to her husband. 5. The children are talking over their cornflakes. 6. We are having an English lesson. 7. The girl is coming into the room.

B. 1. I am finishing this article. 2. I prefer a glass of soda-water. 3. The waitress is already bringing in our tea. 4. The boy is writing a letter to his parents. 5. My cousin is leaving tomorrow.

Exercise 13. Translate the following sentences into English:

A. 1. Вони обідають. 2. Коли ви зазвичай обідаєте? 3. Що у нас сьогодні на вечерю? 4. Ви зараз обідаєте? Тоді я подзвоню вам через чверть години. Добре? 5. Знімай пальто та заходь. Ми якраз обідаємо! 6. О котрій годині зазвичай обідає ваша сім'я? 7. Ніна удома? – Так. Вона обідає. 8. На що ти дивишся? – Я дивлюся на той новий будинок. Красива будівля. Ти бачиш його? 9. Здрастуй, Нечипоренко! Куди ти йдеш? – Я йду в університет, хочу ще раз прослухати в лабораторії 12-й урок. 10. Що ти робиш, Боб? – Я пишу лист, хіба ти не бачиш? 11. Ти йдеш в бібліотеку? – Ні, я йду в кабінет англійської мови (the English study-room). 12. Чому ви палите тут? У кімнаті спить дитина. 13. Чому ви говорите українською? Адже ви на уроці англійської мови, чи не так? 14. Не поспішай! Лекція почнеться тільки через півгодини. 15. Ви чуєте мене, друзі? 16. Ви слухаєте, Семко? 17. Ви добре чуєте? 18. Чому ви не відповідаєте на моє питання? Ви можете відповісти на моє питання? 19. Не кричи так голосно, твоя сестричка спить. 20. Чому ти плачеш, малюче (my little kiddy, my little one)? – Я не плачу. 21. Що роблять студенти? – Вони відповідають на питання викладача. (Вони слухають текст № 12). 22. Про що ти думаєш? Пора готувати уроки. (Пора вставати. Пора йти в школу. Пора лягати спати.)

Exercise 14. Fill in with Present Simple or Continuous:

- A: I 1) am thinking (think) about visiting Jane this afternoon.
B: I wouldn't bother. I 2) _____(think) she's away on holiday.
- A: Mr Jones 3) _____(have) a telephone message from his wife.
B: Can it wait? He 4) _____ (have) a business meeting and I don't want to disturb him.
- A: The police 5) _____(still/look) for fingerprints left in the room.
B: It 6) _____ (look) as if they won't find the criminal.
- A: I 7) _____(love) breathing in clean, country air!

- B: So do I. I 8) _____ (love) every minute of this walking trip.
5. A: I 9) _____ (see) my boss about a pay rise this afternoon.
- B: I 10) _____ (see). That's why you're wearing a suit and tie.

Exercise 15. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or Present Continuous:

Ted: Hello Dad, I am in Birmingham. It 1) _____ (pour) with rain, and I 2) _____ (not/have got) any money.

Bob: What 3) _____ (you/want) me to do about it?

Ted: Could you come and pick me up?

Bob: Ted, you 4) _____ (always/ask) me to do this! I 5) _____ (get) tired of it.

Ted: Please, Dad. I am tired and hungry. My evening classes 6) _____ (start) at 7.00 and I have to be there on time. Can't Mum come and get me?

Bob: The Smiths 7) _____ (visit) us tonight and she is busy in the kitchen. She 8) _____ (bake) a cake at the moment.

Ted: Please Dad. I 9) _____ (ask) you to do this for me one last time. The success of my presentation tonight 10) _____ (depend) on you.

Bob: OK. I'll be there in half an hour. But this is the last time. I 11) _____ (mean) it!

Exercise 16. Fill in the correct pronouns or possessives:

Dear Fiona,

Thanks very much for your last letter. It was great to hear from you. Has _____ husband decided whether or not to accept the promotion 3) _____ boss offered 4) _____ yet? 5) _____ would be brilliant for both of 6) _____ if 7) _____ did. Tom and Sarah visited 8) _____ last month. I hadn't seen 9) _____ since the summer, when 10) _____ all went to Anna's wedding, so 11) _____ was a special weekend. Sarah said 12) _____ might go to America in May 'to see some friends of 13) _____, who the rest of 14) _____ haven't met, but 15) _____ isn't sure. Well, that's 16) _____ most important news for now. I look forward to receiving 17) _____ when 18) _____ have time.

Love, Janet

Exercise 17. Make up dialogues:

- 1) If you could choose where to live, what street would you prefer?
- 2) What do you like/dislike about your street.
- 3) Describe the street you would dream to live in.
- 4) What interesting can you show your foreign guests in the street you live in?
- 5) Which important buildings do you pass when you go to the centre of your town?

Lesson 4

1. Grammar: The Past Indefinite Tense. Determiners. Demonstratives.

The Past Indefinite Tense

I You He(She) We You The students The monitor	got read brought	an English book a letter a newspaper	yesterday, on Monday, the other day.
---	------------------------	--	--

I He (She) We You They	did not (didn't)	leave Moscow begin Text 15 finish the lesson stay at home	yesterday. the other day. last week.
------------------------------------	---------------------	--	--

When Why	did	we you he (she) they	come? rest? work? meet?
-------------	-----	-------------------------------	----------------------------------

«Слова-підказки»: *ago, last night / week / month / summer, yesterday, yesterday morning / afternoon / evening, the day before yesterday, on Sunday, in May, in winter, in 2010; never, seldom, often, sometimes, usually, always.*

Determiners

Such words are: indefinite article (**a/an**), definite article (**the**), demonstratives (**this/that /these/those**), possessive adjectives (**my/your/his etc**), quantifiers (**some/any/every/no/ both/each/either/neither/enough/several/all/most etc**) and numbers (**one/two etc**).

	Adjectives	Pronouns	Adverbs	
		people	things	places
Positive	some any	someone/somebody anyone/anybody	something anything	somewhere anywhere
Interrogative	any	anyone/anybody	anything	anywhere
Negative	no/not any	no one/not anyone nobody/not anybody	nothing not anything	nowhere not anywhere
Positive/Negative/ Interrogative	every	everybody (all people) everyone	everything (all things)	everywhere (in all places)

Some is used before countable or uncountable nouns. *Let's buy **some** biscuits. We've got **some** fruit.* **Some** and **its compounds** (somebody, something etc) are normally used in positive sentences. They are also used in questions when we want to make an offer, a request or when we expect a positive answer. *There is **someone** on the phone, he wants to talk to you. (= positive) Would you like **some** more juice? (= offer)*

Any is used before countable or uncountable nouns. *Is there **any** instant coffee?* **Any** and **its compounds** (anyone, anything etc) are normally used in questions. *Is there **anything** wrong?* They are also used in positive sentences meaning "It doesn't matter how/what/which/when/who/where". *You can buy **anything** you want.* **Any** and **its compounds** can be used after **if** in a positive sentence. *If **anyone** asks for me, tell them I've left.*

No/not any are used before countable or uncountable nouns. **No/not any** and **their compounds** (no one/not anyone, nothing/not anything etc) are used in negations. *There is **nothing** we can do. There **isn't anything** we can do.* **Any** and **its compounds** are used with negative words (hardly, never, without, seldom, rarely etc). *I **hardly** go **anywhere** these days, (not: ~~hardly~~ go ~~nowhere~~ these days).*

Every is used before singular countable nouns. **Every** and **its compounds** take a verb in the singular. ***Every** citizen **has** to pay taxes. (= all citizens) We are doing **everything** in our power to help you. (= all things)*

Demonstratives

This/These are used

- for people or things near us. ***This** vase here is a genuine antique.*
- for present or future situations. *I'm taking a test **this** week.*
- when the speaker is in or near the place he/she is referring to. ***This** church was built 900 years ago .*
- to introduce people or when we introduce ourselves on the phone. *"Mark, **this** is Elaine and **this** is Susie."*

That/Those are used

- for people or things not near us. ***That** man over there is a famous composer.*
- for past situations. ***That** week was the best of my life.*
- to refer back to something mentioned before. *"We're getting married." "**That's** great."*
- when speaking on the phone to ask who the other person is. *"Hello? **This** is Jim Spike. Who's **that**, please?"*

This/these - that/those are not always followed by nouns.

***This** is all I can say on the subject. **That's** how he was rescueded.*

2. Read and translate the text:

MY WORKING DAY

I want to describe my **daily actions** which I did, **more or less regularly**, on weekdays during my **final** year at school. There was little **variation** in my life

then, all days except **weekends** looked very much the same.

On **weekdays** my working day began early in the morning. **As a matter of fact, I** am not an early-riser, that's why I hate getting up early, but **I got used to** it, I usually got up at about 7 o'clock. Then I did my morning exercises and went to the bathroom to wash my face and hands with a soap and brush my teeth with a toothpaste. I didn't **take a shower** in the morning, I generally did it late in the evening before going to bed. At a quarter past seven I was ready to have my breakfast. As a rule, I had a quick light breakfast which **consisted of** a cup of coffee or tea, a **boiled egg** or an omelette and a cheese or sausage sandwich. After breakfast I put on my coat, took my bag and left for school.

As my school is not far from my house, it took me 10 minutes to get there. I never took a bus or a trolley-bus **on my way to** school, I usually walked there.

Six or seven lessons a day was the **ordinary timetable**. I seldom had lunch in the **canteen**, because I usually had **packed one** in my bag (an apple and a sandwich).

The classes at school were over at about three o'clock. Twice a week I stayed at school later to play table-tennis or was busy with the English language club.

When I came home my mother always had dinner ready just in time. Then I changed my school uniform and had a rest. While resting, **I listened to** the music or **looked through** the newspapers or magazines. Then I started doing my **home assignments**. It took me about five hours **to cope with** my homework **properly**. **I normally** finished doing my homework at 10 o'clock in the evening. So I hadn't much time for television and friends, because I had to work hard at all the subjects during my final year at school. But some-times I managed to see an interesting film.

I did well in most school subjects **without any effort**. Besides, I have managed to help my mother about the house and do our shopping, go to the library and have private lessons in English in order **to improve it**.

And **I must admit**, that school life was a very interesting page of my life. I had good friends at school and some lessons were interesting.

After supper I usually **relaxed** for some time and then went on with my homework.

As a rule, **I went to bed** at about 11 o'clock or even later.

3. Word list on the Subject "My Working Day":

- daily actions** – щоденні дії
regularly – регулярно
variation – зміна
packed lunch – сніданок (упакований)
to get used [to] – звикати [до]
to consist of – складатися з
on one's way [to] – дорогою [до]
timetable – розклад (занять)
weekdays – будні
to look through – переглядати
to cope with – справлятися
normally – звичайно, нормально
without any effort – без зусиль
home assignment – домашнє завдання
to go to bed – лягати спати
to get up – прокидатися
to put on one's slippers – надягати тапочки
to take/have a cold (hot) shower – приймати холодний (гарячий) душ
to wash one's face and hands with a soap – мити обличчя і руки милом
- to dress, to put on smth.** – вдягатися
to have breakfast (lunch, dinner, supper) – снідати (снідати вдруге, обідати, вечеряти)
to wake up – пробуджуватися, прокидатися
to walk, to go on foot – іти пішки
to have a break – мати перерву
to rest – відпочивати
to watch TV (television programme) – дивитися телевізор (телепередачу)
to be short of time (pressed for time) – бути обмеженим часом
to have a practice in – тренуватися, практикуватися
- more or less** – більш-менш
final – заключний, останній
weekend (days off) – вихідні дні
as a matter of fact – справа у тому, що; фактично, власне кажучи
to take a shower – приймати душ
boiled egg – варене яйце
ordinary – звичайний
canteen – їдальня
to listen to – слухати
I must admit – я маю визнати
properly – належним чином
to do well – добре вчитися
to improve – покращувати
to relax – розслаблюватися, відпочивати
to leave for school – піти у школу
to take a taxi – узяти таксі
to put on one's dressing gown – надягати халат
to comb one's hair – розчісувати волосся
to clean one's teeth with a toothpaste – чистити зуби зубною пастою
to make a bed – застилати ліжко
- to take a bus (trolley-bus, tram)** – сідати у автобус (тролейбус, трамвай)
to do one's morning exercises – робити ранкову зарядку
to be late for – запізнюватися на
to come home – прийти додому
to have a rest – [трохи] відпочити
to play the piano (the guitar, the violin) – грати на піаніно (гітарі, скрипці)
to finish one's work – закінчити роботу
to listen to the music – слухати музику

4. Speak on the following topics:

What would you call a good working day at the University?

What makes a day off different from a working day?

What would you change in your working day? Why?

Exercise 5. Answer the following questions:

1. When does your working day begin?
2. When do you usually wake up?
3. When do you usually get up?
4. What do you do in the morning?
5. When do you usually have your breakfast?
6. When did your classes at school begin?
7. How long did it take you to get to school?
8. Did you like to be late for the lessons?
9. When were your lessons over?
10. What do you usually have for your dinner?
11. How long did it take you to do home assignments?
12. What do you usually do in the evening?
13. Who cooks food for you?
14. In what way do you help your parents about the house?
15. Do you prefer weekends to weekdays? Why?
16. What time do you usually go to bed?

Exercise 6. (based on the topic "My Working Day"). Fill in the missing words:

1. There was little _____ in my life then, all days _____ week-ends looked very much the same.
2. I am not _____, that's why I hate getting up _____, but I got used to it.
3. I didn't take _____ in the morning, I generally did it late in the evening before going to bed.
4. I had a quick _____ breakfast which consisted of a cup of coffee or tea, a _____ egg or an omelette and cheese or _____ sandwich.
5. Six or seven lessons a day was the ordinary _____.
6. I seldom had lunch in _____, because I usually had _____ one in my bag (an apple and a sandwich).
7. While resting, I _____ the music or _____ the newspapers or magazines.
8. I did well _____ the most school subjects without any _____.
9. But I have _____ to help my parents about the house and do our _____, to go to the library.
10. After supper I usually _____ for some time.

Exercise 7. Match each word in the left-hand column with the best meaning in the right-hand column:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) to dress | a) to stop sleeping |
| 2) to listen to | b) to buy some things or food |

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 3) to cope with | c) to put on clothes |
| 4) to wake | d) to make clean with or in water or other liquid |
| 5) to wash | e) to be still and quiet |
| 6) to cook | f) to do a part of the work of another person |
| 7) to help | g) to manage successfully |
| 8) to rest | h) to prepare food by heating |
| 9) to do shopping | i) to try to hear |

Exercise 8. Fill in: this, that, these or those:

1. "Hi Beryl. This is my sister Sue." "Pleased to meet you, Sue."
2. "I won the competition!" " _____'s great!"
3. "Can you see _____ airplane in the sky? It's a Boeing."
4. "My friend is getting married _____ year on Valentine's Day."
5. " _____ are my new shoes. Do you like them?"
6. "Can you pass me _____ book on the shelf behind you please?"
7. "Grandad, do you remember 1914?" "Yes _____ was the year I married your grandmother."
8. _____ people over there must be waiting for the train."
9. "Good evening _____ is the Prime Minister speaking to the nation."
10. "I bought _____ socks today." "What a lovely shade of green!"
11. "Are you going away _____ weekend?" "Yes, we're going camping."
12. "I hear she's getting married." _____ 's right. She's getting married next month."
13. " _____ jeans are so tight I can hardly move." "Why don't you buy some bigger ones?"
14. "I'm fed up. I've had enough of _____ terrible weather." "So have I, but it'll soon be summer!"
15. "What's wrong, Sally?" "Well, you won't like _____ but I've got to tell you."
16. "Are _____ children over there Mrs. Brown's?" "Yes. They're very well-behaved, aren't they?"
17. "Their wedding is a fortnight today but I won't be able to go. I'm going away _____ weekend."
18. "We are moving to a bigger house." "Really? _____ 's fantastic!"
19. _____ boots hurt my feet." "Maybe you should get another pair."
20. "I told him that no one trusts him." "There was no reason to say _____!"
21. "What do you think of this pair of sunglasses?" "I prefer _____ ones over there."

Exercise 9. Underline the correct item:

1. There is no one/anyone at home.
2. There are some/any books on my desk.
3. There is any/no ice-cream left.
4. Did she tell you nothing/anything?
5. There is hardly no/any milk left.

6. She won't lend you *no/any* money.
7. I need *any/some* time alone.
8. I get up at 8.00 *any/every* morning.
9. If *anybody/nobody* wants to leave, say so now.
10. *Nobody/Anybody* phoned this morning.
11. I haven't seen *nothing/anything* yet.
12. There is *anything/nothing* good on TV tonight.
13. *Some/Every* day he will be famous.
14. No *one/anyone* was at home this morning.
15. *Somebody/Everybody* who went camping had a good time.
16. *Nobody/Anybody* told me that it was Ann's birthday.
17. Is there *everything/anything* I can do to help?
18. There is *something/everything* wrong with the drinks machine.
19. Are you going *nowhere/anywhere* this weekend?
20. This has *nothing/anything* to do with you.
21. I can't find my keys *anywhere/nowhere*.

Exercise 10. Underline the correct item:

As soon as we arrived at school we knew that 1) something/ anything was wrong. We soon discovered that 2) someone/anyone had broken into our home. Many things had been stolen 3) everyone/each had lost 4) something/anything. 5) Every/Some money had also been taken. Before we phoned the police, we went to ask our neighbour if she had seen 6) anyone/no one or 7) anything/nothing suspicious, but she hadn't. We went back home to phone the police. As we sat waiting for them to arrive, we surveyed the damage that was 8) everywhere/anywhere around us. 9) No/Some of our most personal possessions lay smashed and broken before us, 10) no one/someone spoke. Eventually, the police arrived and asked us to make a list of 11) everything/something that had been stolen, as they started to check for fingerprints. They warned us that it was unusual to find 12) any/some, because most burglars wore gloves. When the police had finished checking for prints, they took our list of 13) everything/something that was missing, and they told us that 14) someone/anyone would visit us over the next few days to advise us on new security measures.

Exercise 11. Fill in: some, any or their compounds:

1. "Have we got any milk?" "Oh no, I meant to get _____ yesterday."
"Shall I go and buy _____?"
2. "Does _____ else want a lift?" "I'd like one if you've got _____ space in the car."
3. "Shall we buy Jenny _____ flowers?" "I don't know, _____ practical might be better."
4. "Can _____ give me a hand with these boxes?" "I can help if there are _____ light ones."
5. "Does _____ want to go to the cinema tonight? I've got _____ free

- tickets." "Is there _____ in particular on?" "Yes, a James Bond film."
6. "Do you want _____ vegetables with your steak?" "Well, I wouldn't mind _____ chips if you've got _____"
 7. "Has Jasmine got _____ exams this year?" "I think she's got _____ in June." "Is there _____ I can do to help her?"
 8. "I've put _____ blankets at the end of the bed but if you need more, or _____ else, just ask." "Actually, there is _____ Could I have _____ towels, too?"
 9. "Do you want to invite _____ special to your birthday tea?" "Could I ask _____ friends from the art college?" "Yes, of course."
 10. "Shall I put _____ music on?" "Yes, have you got _____ relaxing?"
 11. "I wish I had _____ interesting to do." "I could give you _____ ideas, but you never like _____ I suggest."
 12. "Did you go _____ during the holidays?" "I wanted to go _____ but unfortunately I didn't have _____ money."

Exercise 12. Give the interrogative and negative forms of the following sentences:

1. Ann got a good mark yesterday. 2. We translated the text two days ago. 3. He was translating the text at that time. 4. He came home late last night. 5. She finished her work half an hour ago. 6. They had breakfast at 8. 7. They were waiting for us then. 8. My friend saw this film last week. 9. He was looking at the people in the hall. 10. There was a mistake in his test. 11. Ann was having dinner at six o'clock. 12. They had to take four exams.

Exercise 13. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense-form:

1. They (to go) to Ivan Franko Theatre last week. 2. They (to be) to the theatre twice this week. 3. He (to come) home, (to have) a short rest, (to read) an article from the latest magazine and (to begin) to prepare his lessons. 4. When (to return) your friend from the South? – She (to return) yesterday. – You (to go) to the station to meet her? – No, I (can) not. I (to be) too busy. 5. With whom (to discuss) you this question yesterday? 6. I (to see) this film this week and I like it very much. 7. When I (to enter) the kitchen, I (to see) that my mother (to stand) at the table and (to cut) some cabbage. She (to cook) dinner. 8. As soon as I (to hear) a cry I (to run) out of the room and (to see) that the child (to lie) on the ground and (to cry). "What (to happen)? (To hurt) you yourself?" 9. I (to want) to get tickets to the Bolshoi Theatre. – You (to want) to hear the new opera? (Not to hear) you it yet? 10. What (to go) you to do? – Now I (to go) to have a bite. I (to have) not any dinner today. 11. As soon as I (to see) him, I (to understand) that he (to work) hard. He (to think) of something very important for him and (not to notice) anything. 12. Your brother (to return) from the North? – Yes, he (to come) two days ago. 13. (To be) you to the Crimea? When (to be) you there? – I (to stay) there for two months in 1979. I (to remember) I (to like) everything there, and most of all I (to like) the

sea. 14. I (to look for) my gloves for half an hour and at last I (decide) to go out without them.

Exercise 14. Read the following sentences a) in the interrogative, b) in the negative:

1. Bob came home late. 2. She gave them her dictionary. 3. He took a shower. 4. The students went to the lab. 5. They got up early. 6. Ann brought me a new magazine. 7. He left for London on Monday. 8. They wrote to me every month. 9. He read the letter out loud. 10. You did it all by yourself. 11. She spoke English fluently. 12. They sat down quietly. 13. Jim saw them together. 14. They all heard the song. 15. He paid the money yesterday. 16. Benny found his ball. 17. She remembered every word. 18. Ann made good progress in English. 19 The boys knew where to go. 20. They celebrated New Year. 21 She got an excellent mark. 22. My parents met me at the station. 23 You thought he was right. 24 We discussed it at the meeting. 25. It troubled me very much, 26. Robert, repaired Ann's iron. 27. They began on time. 28. You told John about it. 29. He spent a lot of time on his English. 30. They admired her singing very much.

Exercise 15. Read and complete the text with the verbs below:

THE STORY OF THE KELLY GANG

Charles Tait, an Australian film director, (1) made the first feature film, The Story of the Kelly Gang, in 1906. The film (2) _____ the true story of Ned Kelly, a famous Australian gangster and his gang, who (3) _____ horses and cattle, (4) _____ banks, and often (5) _____ metal armour for protection. Although they (6) _____ criminals, Kelly and his gang (7) _____ heroes to the ordinary people of Australia, because many of them (8) _____ the government at that time. The film (9) _____ for eighty minutes and (10) _____ just \$450 dollars to make! The Canadian actor who _____ (11) _____ Kelly obviously (12) _____ there was a future in the movie business, because he (13) _____ before the end of filming, and so Tait, the director, (14) _____ make the last scenes without him. Because there were no close-ups, no one (15) _____ see that it was a different actor playing Kelly! The film (16) _____ at the Athenaeum Hall in Melbourne on 24th December 1906. It (17) _____ a great success, making over \$25,000 at the box office.

became	disappeared	made	stole	was	cost
didn't think	had to	opened	told	were	could
robbed	lasted	played	hated	wore	

Lesson 5

1. Grammar. The Past Continuous Tense. There is/are.

The Past Continuous Tense

Our cousin My sister Her friend	was (not) reading a newspaper playing the piano listening to the news	when he came. when I rang. her up. at that time.
The girls	were (not)	

Were	you they	playing chess having supper taking a shower	when he returned? at that moment?
------	-------------	---	--------------------------------------

Речення з *There is/are*

There is	a some no pot any	book cup knife plate newspaper	on the table. on the desk.
There are	some no not any (not) many a lot of a few	books exercise-books cups knives	on the table. on the desk.
There is	some no not any (not) much a lot of little a little	chalk bread butter sugar milk	

Is there	any	book cup knife plate newspaper	on the table. on the desk.
----------	-----	--	-------------------------------

Are there	any many few	books exercise-books cups knives	on the table. on the desk.
Is there	any much little	chalk bread butter sugar milk	

There	clock glass cat dog	is	on under	the	desk. chair. bed. sofa. bookcase.
	boxes pencils books	are			

NUMERALS

Cardinal	Ordinal
one	the first
two	the second
three	the third
four	the fourth
five	the fifth
six	the sixth
seven	the seventh
eight	the eighth
nine	the ninth
ten	the tenth
eleven	the eleventh
twelve	the twelfth
hundred	the hundredth
thousand	the thousandth
one million	the one millionth

Похідні числівники утворюються від основи простих числівників за допомогою:

- суфікса *teen* (від 13 до 19): **fourteen**
- суфікса *ty* (від 20 до 90): **twenty**

NUMERALS

101	– one hundred and one
245	– two hundred and forty-five
359	– three hundred and fifty-nine
712	– seven hundred and twelve
2 018	– two thousand and eighteen
8 541	– eight thousand five hundred and forty-one
3 400 936	– three million four hundred thousand nine hundred and thirty-six

Роки позначаються кількісними числівниками:

1900 – *nineteen hundred*,

1909 – *nineteen nine* або *nineteen hundred and nine*,

1977 – *nineteen seventy-seven* або *nineteen hundred and seventy-seven*

Слово *year* після позначення року не вживається, але може використовуватися перед ним: *in the year nineteen twelve*.

Дати позначаються порядковими числівниками, на письмі і при читанні:

25th January, 1912 *the twenty-fifth of January, nineteen-twelve*

January 25th, 1912 або *January the twenty-fifth, nineteen twelve*, January 25, 1912.

2. Read and translate the text:

LEISURE-TIME ACTIVITIES (MY DAYS OFF) AND HOLIDAYS

On weekdays I usually go to school, but on my days off I prefer to rest. I think it is important for us to rest after hard work. That's why our weekends are more **attractive** than weekdays. At our leisure time we **go in for sports**, read the books, go to the library, cinema, theatre, park, museum, or exhibition. Sometimes we go to the zoo or the circus and enjoy ourselves watching animals. As a rule, we try to **spend** most of the **time outdoors**. Some people prefer to go to the country to see their relatives and friends. In winter we like to go to the winter forest **to ski** and **skate**. After **having** such a **pleasant rest in the open air**, you are always happy to return home and **have a rest** sitting near the TV-set and watching an interesting TV programme. In summer and spring **picnics are popular with** schoolchildren and their parents. They are fond of picnics **chiefly** because they **have an excellent opportunity to admire** the **beauty of nature**, **to run on the grass** and **to play interesting games**, **to have a bite without observing table manners**. But the most

exciting event is **making a fire**. The children are fond of collecting wood in the forest and sitting round the fire. And again, they like to return home after a picnic. And now they think that "**there is no place like home**" the as the saying goes.

Many people like to go to the cinema and theatre on weekends and holidays and enjoy seeing an interesting film or performance.

As for me, my days off are **normally** like this. I hate getting up early and on weekends **I can afford** to wake up later than usual. As a rule, I get up at 8 o'clock. Then I do my morning exercises, wash my face and hands and brush my teeth. After having breakfast I relax a little: listen to a lovely stereo music and try to forget about all my problems. Then I can visit my friends and have a chat with them about our life. Sometimes my friends and I go to the museum or art exhibition. As a rule, my activities on weekends **depend on my plans**, but **in any case I** manage to do a lot of things and to have a rest. I always **try to do my best** to have a really good time. But **unfortunately time flies** very **quickly** on weekends, and the next Monday morning comes, and **I am looking forward to** my next days off.

3. Word List on the Subject "Leisure-Time Activities (My Days Off) and Holidays":

leisure – дозвілля

to go in for sports – займатися спортом

to ski – бігати на лижах

to have a pleasant rest – приємно відпочивати

to have a rest – відпочити (трохи)

to be popular with – бути популярним серед

to have an excellent opportunity – мати пречудову нагоду

beauty – краса

to run on the grass – бігати по траві

to have a bite – під'їсти

to make a fire – розпалити багаття

normally – звичайно, як зазвичай

in any case – у будь-якому разі

to afford – дозволяти собі

attractive – привабливий, звабливий

to spend time outdoors – проводити час на свіжому повітрі

to skate – бігати на ковзанах

in the open air – на [свіжому] повітрі

picnic – пікнік

without observing table manners – брутально поводячи себе за столом

to admire – захоплюватися, милуватися

nature – природа

to depend on smb.'s plans – залежати від чийхось планів

chiefly – головним чином

to play interesting games – грати у цікаві ігри

There is no place like home (proverb) – У гостях добре, а вдома краще (прислів'я)

Exercise 4. (based on the topic "Leisure-Time Activities and Holidays"). Fill in the missing words:

1. In our _____ we go in for sports, read the books, go to the library, theatre, park, or museum.
2. As a rule, I try to spend most the of time _____.
3. Some people prefer to go to the country to visit their _____.
4. In summer and spring _____ are popular with schoolchildren.
5. They are fond of picnics chiefly because they have an excellent _____ to admire the beauty of _____.
6. The children are fond of _____ wood in the forest and sitting round the _____.
7. I _____ getting up early and on weekends I can _____ to wake up later than usual.
8. As a rule my activities on weekends _____ on my plans, but in any case I _____ to do a lot of things and to have a rest.
9. But _____ time flies very quickly on weekends, and the next Monday morning comes, and I am _____ to my next days off.

Exercise 5. Answer the following questions:

1. In what way, do you prefer to spend your holidays?
2. When do you have your days off?
3. When do you usually get up on weekends?
4. Where do you usually spend your weekends?
5. What kind of sports do you go in for?
6. What is the best way of spending holidays?
7. What kind of sport do you prefer to go in for in winter (summer)?
8. In what way did you spend your last holidays?
9. What holiday do you like best of all?
10. How many public holidays are there in Great Britain? Name them.
11. Is New Year widely observed in England?
12. In what way do English people celebrate Christmas Day?
13. What kind of holiday is St. Valentine's Day? Do you observe this holiday?
14. What kind of egg is an Easter egg?
15. Do you like to be laughed at on April Fool's Day?
16. When do English and Americans celebrate Christmas Day? Is it the same date as in Ukraine (Russia)?
17. How do people decorate their homes for Christmas (in Ukraine, in Britain, in the USA)?

6. Read and translate the text:

SPORT AND GAMES

People all over the world **are fond of** sports and games. That is one of the things in which people of every nationality and class **are united**. All kinds of physical exercises are very useful to make our bodies strong enough to keep ourselves fit and healthy. The most popular **outdoor winter sports** are **shooting, hunting**, hockey, in the countries where the weather is frosty and there is much snow – skating, skiing and **tobogganing**. Some people greatly enjoy figure-skating and ski-jumping. It's so nice to go to the skating-rink or to the forest on a frosty sunny day!

Summer **affords excellent opportunities for** swimming, boating, **yachting**, cycling, **gliding** and many other sports. Among outdoor games football takes the first place in public interest; this game is played in all countries of the world. The other games that **have firmly established themselves in favour** in different countries are **golf, lawn-tennis**, cricket, volley-ball, basket-ball, and so on. Badminton is also very popular.

All the year round many people **indulge in boxing, wrestling**, athletics, gymnastics and **track and field events**. Scores of young girls and women **go in for callisthenics**. Over the last few years aerobics has become popular with young girls. It helps them to be slim, healthy and strong. The founder of this kind of sport was a well-known American actress Jane Fonda. Being a great **enthusiast** of aerobics she has been trying to **initiate** many young women from all over the world **into** this sport.

Among **indoor games** the most popular are billiards, table-tennis, draughts and some others, but the great international game is chess, of course. The results of chess **tournaments** are studied and discussed by thousands of enthusiasts in different countries.

So we may say that sport is one of the things that **makes** people **kin**. To cut the long story short, I should admit that everyone must do all he can to be healthy. Physically **inactive** people get old earlier than those who have plenty of exercises. If you do daily exercises you **feel refreshed**, have a good posture, and that makes you feel good. I can add that good health is better than the best medicine. You have "A sound **mind** in a sound body," as the old Latin saying goes. The English proverb "Sickness in the body brings sickness to the mind" expresses a **similar** idea, but

from a different point of view.

7. Word list on the Subject "Sport and Games":

golf – гольф

shooting – стрільба

lawn-tennis – теніс

outdoor winter games – зимові ігри
на відкритому повітрі

wrestling – боротьба

gliding – планерний спорт

indoor games – ігри під дахом

to feel refreshed – почувати себе
освіженим

to make smb. kin – робити кого-
небудь близьким

to go in for smth. – захоплюватися
чимось

enthusiast – ентузіаст

mind – дух

**to afford excellent opportunities for
smth.** – надавати чудові
можливості для чого-небудь

tobogganing – санний спорт

hunting – полювання

boxing – бокс

track and field events – легка
атлетика

callisthenics – ритмічна гімнастика

yachting – вітрильний спорт

tournament – турнір

to be fond of smth. – любити,
подобатися

to initiate into smth. – прилучати
кого-небудь до чого-небудь

to establish oneself in favour – бути
в пошані

to unite – об'єднувати

inactive – бездіяльний, пасивний

to indulge in smth. – захоплюватися
чимось, займатися (спортом)

Some Popular Sports

car (motorcycle) racing –
автогонки (мотогонки)

boxing – бокс

cycling – їзда на велосипеді

fencing – фехтування

gliding – планерний спорт

mountaineering – альпінізм

skating – катання на ковзанах

sky diving (parachuting) – стрибки
з парашутом

weight-lifting – піднімання штанги

steeplechase – біг із перешкодами

discus (hammer, javelin) throwing –
метання диска (молота, списа)

hurdle races – гони з перешкодами

pole vault (vaulting) – стрибки з
упором або жердиною

artistic gymnastics – художня
гімнастика

archery – стрільба з лука

diving – стрибки у воду

figure-skating – фігурне катання

gymnastics – гімнастика

rowing and canoeing – веслування

ski-jumping – стрибки на лижах

athletics (track-and-field) –
атлетика (легка атлетика)

wrestling – боротьба

swimming – плавання

high (long, triple) jump – стрибки у
висоту (у довжину, потрійні)

marathon – марафонський біг

race (run) – біг

Open Air Games

(lawn) tennis – теніс
basket-ball – баскетбол
football (soccer) – футбол
rugby (rugger) – регбі
water polo – водне поло

badminton – бадмінтон
cricket – крикет
hockey – хокей
open air games – ігри на свіжому повітрі

Indoor Games

indoor games – ігри в приміщенні
draughts – шашки
table-tennis – настільний теніс

chess – шахи
squash – гра в м'яча (на зразок тенісу)

Sport Events

tournament – турнір, спортивне змагання
championship – чемпіонат
competition – змагання

amateur (professional) sport – аматорський (професійний) спорт
cup (final, semi-final) match – матч на кубок (фінальний, півфінальний)

Participants

team – команда
sportsman – спортсмен
official (umpire, referee, judge) – суддя, арбітр
opponent (rival) – супротивник (суперник)

sportswoman – спортсменка
participant – учасник
national (Olympic, college) team – національна (олімпійська, коледжу) команда

Audience

audience – публіка
spectator – глядач

fan – уболівальник
sport enthusiast – шанувальник спорту

Scoring System

best (record, fastest) time – кращий (рекордний) час
draw – нічия
to lose – програвати
score – рахунок

defeat – поразка

goal – гол
point – очко
victory – перемога

Sport Equipment

barbell – штанга
chessboard – шахівниця
javelin – спис
racket – ракетка
trampoline – батут

beam – перекладка
discus – диск
net – сітка
rings – кільця

Additional Words and Expressions on the Subject "Sport and Games":

athletic training – тренування з атлетики

to kick the ball – вдарити м'яча

to score a goal – забити гола

to keep the score – утримувати рахунок

to end a game in a draw – закінчити гру внічию

to win a prize (a cup, a victory) – виграти приз (кубок), здобути перемогу

to win the championship – виграти чемпіонат

to win by 2 (3, etc.) goals (points) – виграти на 2 (3 і т.д.) голи (очки)

to win with the score 3:0 in smb.'s favour – виграти з рахунком 3:0 на чю-небудь користь

to set up (break) a record – встановити (побити) рекорд

the world (national, European) record – світовий (національний, європейський) рекорд

Do you go in for sports? – Чи ти займаєшся спортом?

What's your favourite sport? – Який Ваш улюблений вид спорту?

I like heavy athletics (track-and-field athletics, figure-skating, tennis). – Мені подобається важка атлетика (легка атлетика, фігурне катання, теніс).

What kind of aquatics (water sports) do you like best of all? – Які види водного спорту тобі найбільш подобаються?

I am fond of swimming (diving, yachting and water polo). – Мені подобається плавання (стрибки у воду, вітрильний спорт; водне поло).

Which strokes of swimming do you prefer? – Яким видам плавання Ви віддаєте перевагу?

Do you play football (tennis, cricket, basket-ball, volley ball)? – Чи граєте Ви у футбол (теніс, крикет, баскетбол, волейбол)?

Our football teams participate in international matches. – Наші футбольні команди беруть участь у міжнародних змаганнях.

They have gamed remarkable achievements in sports. – Вони досягають видатних успіхів у спорті.

What is the most popular sport game in your country (Britain, the USA)? – Яка спортивна гра найпопулярніша у Вашій країні (Великобританії, США)?

What team do you fan for? – За яку команду Ви вболіваєте?

The team won (lost) the game. – Команда виграла (програла) гру.

The match ended in a draw. – Матч закінчився внічию.

The competition (championship) will be held at the stadium. – Змагання (чемпіонат) відбуватиметься на стадіоні.

Who is the coach (captain) of your team? – *Хто тренер (капітан) Вашої команди?*

Would you like to play a game of tennis? – *Чи хочете зіграти партію в теніс?*

Where's the tennis court? – *Де знаходиться тенісний корт ?*

Exercise 8. (based on the topic "Sport and Games"). Fill in the missing words:

1. All kinds of _____ exercises are very useful to make our bodies _____ enough to keep ourselves _____ and healthy.
2. The most popular outdoor winter sports are shooting, hunting, _____; in the countries where the weather is frosty and there is much snow – skating, skiing and _____.
3. It's nice to go to the _____ on a frosty sunny day.
4. Summer affords excellent _____ for swimming, boating, yachting, _____, gliding and many other sports.
5. Among outdoor games _____ takes the first place in public interest; this game is played in all _____ of the world.
6. All the year round many people _____ in boxing, wrestling, athletics, gymnastics and _____ events.
7. Over the last few years _____ has become popular with young girls.
8. Being a great _____ of aerobics she has been trying to _____ many women all over the world into this sport.
9. The results of chess _____ are studied and discussed by thousands of _____ in different countries.
10. If you do daily exercises, you feel _____, to have a good _____, and that makes you feel good.
11. I can add that good _____ is better than the best medicine.

Exercise 9. In the spaces provided, mark each true statement T and each false one F:

1. The goalkeeper acts as a judge in football.
2. Women are good football players as a rule.
3. Track and field events are never included in Olympic Games.
4. There is no difference between "soccer" and "rugby."
5. Ice hockey is popular with women.
6. Hockey is one of the most popular winter games.
7. People who play draughts are called draughtsmen.
8. We use ball when playing badminton.
9. You can touch the ball with your hands when playing football.
10. The founder of aerobics was a well-known American actress Jane Fonda.
11. Summer affords excellent opportunities for skating and skiing.

12. In hockey a handball and rackets are used.
13. Boxers fight with bare hands.
14. Badminton can be played only indoors.
15. The most popular spectator sport is football.

10. Read and translate the text:

FOOTBALL

Nobody in the game of football should be called a genius. A genius is somebody like Norman Einstein.

Football is a very popular sport played all over the world. It is played in most European and Latin-American countries; it is played in Africa and Asia. It is played by men and women. Millions of people in more than 140 countries play football. In the USA it is called **soccer**. Football is an official game of the **Olympics**.

There is a simple **aim** in football: **to kick** or **head** the ball in to the goal of your **opponent's team**. Basically, there is also one simple rule: no one except the **goalkeeper** may use their hands to play the ball. In a soccer game there are two teams of 11 players, who try to score a point by kicking a ball into the **opponent's net**. Football is played on a **rectangular** field with a net on each short side of the field.

Eleven members of each team **defend** their side of the field **to prevent** the ball from being forced into their goal, which results in a **point, scored** by the team kicking the ball. There are only three **officials involved** in the game: the **referee** and two **linesmen**. The equipment used in soccer is also very simple.

The history of this game began in the **antiquity**. Games **similar** to soccer can be **traced** in **ancient** China as early as **400 BC**. Egyptians played a kind of football too. They played games involving the kicking of a ball. In about **200 AD** the Romans played a game in which two teams tried to score by **advancing** a ball across a line on the field. The Romans passed the ball to one another but they never kicked it. London children in the 12th century played a form of soccer in the streets. During the 1800s the English played a game similar to soccer. Many rules changed and now we have a modern variant of that football ancient people used to play.

Nowadays the sport of football has grown to a **global scale**, including men's and women's teams, and the **World Cup** and European **Championship** competitions, which is played every four years. Also in Europe **League of Champions** and **FIFA Cup** competitions take place every year. There are also

championship in Latin America and Africa.

But the modern version of football came from England. This game was not so popular until the **middle** of 1900s.

It started as a game involving kicking and **handing**, but later this **branched** off into two separate sports: rugby and football, which is what the Americans call soccer. Around the late nineteenth century, English football began **spreading** over Europe. The United States was one of the last to **implement** football or soccer as a national sport. The Canadian Soccer Association was established in 1912 while the United States Soccer Federation was **set up** in 1913. The first World Cup Championship was in Montevideo, Uruguay. Since then it has been played every four years except during World War II. The North American Soccer League (NASL) was formed in 1968. But it didn't **gain** popularity until the 1970s.

The rules of play for soccer are simple. The referee makes most of the decisions, and **attempts** to **encourage fair play**.

11. Word List on the Subject "Football":

soccer – футбол

aim – наміри, мета (ціль)

to head – ударяти головою

opponent's team – команда суперників, суперники

rectangular – прямокутний

to prevent – попереджувати, заважати, не допускати; оберігати

point – очко, гол

to involve – втягувати, вовлекать

linesmen – судді на лінії

similar – подібний (to); схожий

to hand – давати, передавати, вручати

nowadays – у наші дні; тепер

World Cup Championship – чемпіонат світу з футболу

FIFA Cup – Кубок УЄФА

ancient – древній; старовинний

to spread – розгортати(ся); поширювати(ся)

to set up – базуватися, відкривати; планувати

attempt – спроба

the Olympics – Олімпійські ігри

to kick – ударяти ногою

goalkeeper – воротар

opponent's net – ворота команди суперників

to defend – захищати

to score – підраховувати очки, вести рахунок

officials – суддівський склад, судді

referee – рефері, суддя

fair play – чесна гра

to trace – прослідкувати(ся)

to advance – просуватися вперед; наступати

global scale – світовий масштаб

League of Champions – Ліга чемпіонів

middle – середина

to branch – розділитися

to implement – інструмент, прилад; засіб; інвентар

to encourage – підтримувати; заохочувати

to gain – поширюватися

Exercise 12. Answer the following questions:

1. How is football called in the States?
2. When did the history of football begin?
3. Where was football invented?
4. What is the main aim in football?
5. How often are the World Cup and European Championship competitions played?
6. Where was the modern version of football invented?
7. When did English football start spreading over Europe?
8. When was the North American Soccer League (NASL) formed?
9. When was the United States Soccer Federation set up?

Exercise 13. Translate from Ukrainian into English:

1. Футбол є дуже популярним видом спорту, яким займаються у всьому світі.
2. Футбол є національним видом спорту у більшості європейських, латиноамериканських і африканських країн.
3. Єгиптяни також грали у футбол.
4. Тепер футбол виріс до світових масштабів, є нього грають чоловічі і жіночі команди, проходять першості на Кубок світу і чемпіонати Європи.
5. Щороку в Європі проходить першість Ліги чемпіонів і Кубка УЄФА.
6. Сполучені Штати Америки стали однією з останніх країн, які прийняли футбол як національний вид спорту.
7. Футбольна Федерація США була створена в 1913 році.
8. Перший чемпіонат світу з футболу пройшов у Монтевідео, Уругвай.
9. Чемпіонат світу з футболу проходить кожні чотири роки, за винятком періоду Другої світової війни.
10. У 1968 році була сформована Північноамериканська Футбольна Ліга (NASL).
11. Історія футболу почалася в античності.
12. У футболі дуже проста мета - забити ногою або головою гол у ворота протилежної команди.
13. У футбол грають на прямокутному полі, на менших сторонах якого розташовані ворота.

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. Я закінчила школу два роки тому. Я вже закінчила роботу і можу піти з вами в кіно. Коли я закінчила роботу, я вирішила піти погуляти. Збори закінчилися, і ми пішли додому.
2. Моя сестра поступила в інститут у 1982 році. Коли я увійшла до зали, я побачила, що там було багато студентів.
- 3.

Київляни гордяться своїм містом-героєм. 4. Ми не можемо не думати про майбутні іспити. 5. Його батьки виїхали з Івано-Франківська, коли йому було 10 років. 6. Я здала на відмінно вступний екзамен з англійської мови. Скільки іспитів ви витримали минулого року? Ніна склала іспит з фізики, але не здала хімію. 7. Яку оцінку ви отримали за твір? 8. Хлопчик добре відповідав, і вчитель поставив йому п'ять. 9. Я знаю цього викладача, він екзаменував мене з історії минулого року. 10. У неї гарні оцінки з усіх предметів. 11. Мій брат любить математику, фізику і хімію, а я люблю літературу і географію. 12. Минулого тижня у нас була контрольна. Я отримала три. 13. На уроках практики мови ми читаємо, відповідаємо на питання, робимо усні і письмові вправи. Зробіть вправу 3 усно, а 7 і 8 письмово. 14. Вчора я готувала уроки в лабораторії. Я люблю працювати з магнітофоном. Якщо ви хочете позбавитися від ваших помилок, ви повинні більше працювати в лабораторії. 15. Я хочу взяти участь у роботі цього наукового товариства. 16. Борис вирішив вступити в наше спортивне товариство, він захоплюється спортом. 17. Хоча в нашому Університеті є хороший гімнастичний зал, ми часто ходимо на стадіон. 18. Коли ви вступили в драмгурток? - Кілька днів тому. 19. Наш англійський клуб допомагає нам краще опанувати мову. 20. У моєї подруги хороший голос. Вона член нашого хорового гуртка. 21. Минулого тижня я робила доповідь з домашнього читання. Я зробила багато помилок, і викладач поставила мені незадовільну оцінку.

Exercise 15.

a) Write the following numerals in words:

395, 745, 1950, 13 408, 282 867, 345 296, 5 712 133.

134, 298, 355, 948, 3526, 9011, 193, 561, 7 506 017, 35 616 234.

b) Read the following numerals and telephone numbers quickly:

273, 1882, 19 176, 30 016, 55 744, 81 614, 389 107, 6 271 398.

104, 151, 175, 189, 1012, 1017, 1038, 2568, 4083, 5993, 6410, 10 784, 257 629, 841 403, 2 184 001; 134-86-78, 253-64-92, 289-47-30.

Exercise 16. Translate the following sentences into English:

A. 1. На стіні картина. На стіні годинник. На стіні класна дошка. На столі картопля. На столі книги. У глеку молоко. На тарілці масло. На столі сіль. На дошці (написана) пропозиція. 2. Картина на стіні. Годинник на стіні. Класна дошка на стіні. Коробки на столі. Портфелі на столі. Книги на столі. Молоко в глеку. Масло на тарілці. Сіль на столі. Пропозиція (написана) на дошці. 3. На столі лампа. Лампа на столі. На столі газети. Газети на столі. На вулиці автомобіль. Автомобіль на вулиці. Біля стіни диван. Диван біля стіни. У коробці олівці. Олівці в коробці. 4. На стільці немає книги. Книга не на стільці. На стільці немає капелюха. Капелюх не на стільці. На стільці немає

зошита. Зошит не на стільці. У коробці немає авторучки. Авторучка не в коробці. У сумці немає грошей. Гроші не в сумці. 5. У портфелі не три книги, а чотири. У портфелі не п'ять олівців, а шість. У портфелі не дві ручки, а одна. 6. Якраз пора обідати. Якраз пора пити чай.

В. 1. Це моя кімната. Посередині кімнати стоїть стіл. На столі глек. У глеку молоко. На тарілці масло. 2. Хай Бені сідає за стіл. Якраз пора снідати. Молоко в глеку. Масло на тарілці. Ніж біля тарілки. Де хліб? Хліб в буфеті (sideboard). 3. Де журнал? На столі немає журналу. Журнал не на столі, а на стільці. 4. У коробці немає авторучки. Авторучка не в коробці, а в столі. 5. Де гроші? У сумці немає грошей. Твої гроші не в сумці. Вони на столі. 6. У твоєму портфелі багато зошитів? – Не дуже, дві або три. – На дошці багато крейди? – Так, я так думаю. 7. На вашій вулиці багато будинків? – Так, у нас багато красивих нових будинків. – У вашому парку багато квітів? – Не дуже, але вони мені дуже подобаються.

Exercise 17. Answer the following questions:

A. 1. Is this a classroom? 2. Are there many desks in it? How many? 3. Are there any chairs in the room? How many? 4. Are there any lamps in the room? 5. Are they on the walls? 6. How many lamps are there in it? 7. How many windows are there in the room? 8. What colour are the walls? 9. What colour are the desks? 10. What colour are the chairs? 11. Is there a blackboard on the wall? 12. What colour is the board? 13. Are there any sentences on it? 14. How many books are there on your desk? 15. Are they English or Russian? 16. How many exercise-books are there in your bag? 17. Are they thick or thin? 18. Is this book thick or thin? 19. What is there on this table? 20. What is there in that box?

Exercise 18. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. Чи багато студентів у цій кімнаті? – Ні, не багато. 2. Посередині цієї кімнати стіл. На столі квіти. 3. У нашій квартирі п'ять кімнат. Вони великі і світлі. 4. Де твій брат? – Він у тій кімнаті. 5. На столі немає хліба. 6. Наш університет знаходиться недалеко від центру. 7. На цій вулиці багато великих будинків. 8. У цій кімнаті багато світла. 9. Олег у 105 групі. 10. Неллі в 102 групі. 11. Борис у 501 групі. 12. Читайте текст 9. 13. Зробіть вправу 2 на дошці. 14. Біля дошки немає крейди. 15. На столі багато ручок, олівців і зошитів. 16. Чи є яблука на тарілці? 17. Яблука в корзині. 18. Чашки на столі. 19. Ваш племінник у школі? – Ні, він удома. 20. У нашій групі не десять, а дев'ять студентів. 21. На цьому столі багато коробок? – Ні, не багато. 22. У нашій кімнаті не три, а чотири вікна. 23. Приходьте о шостій годині. 24. Повертайтеся в половині десятої. 25. Джеймс – восьмилітній хлопчик, його сестра – шестирічна дівчинка. 26. Скажи мені, будь ласка, твій телефон. – Будь ласка. Запиши. 338-29-41. 27. Синові Пітера 7 років. Сестрі Артура 15

років. Бабусі Тома 68 років.

Exercise 19. Fill in the blanks with there is or it is:

1. _____ a party at our Institute tonight. 2. _____ a lot of work to do. 3. _____ not any coffee left. 4. _____ cold today; _____ a strong wind. 5. _____ not a single mistake in your exercise. 6. _____ dark; _____ no moon. 7. _____ not very far to walk. 8. _____ too early to leave yet. 9. _____ a cassette-recorder in the classroom. 10. _____ strange that she is absent today. 11. _____ a post-office near the house I live in. 12. _____ a pity that you can't come with me. 13. _____ not true to say that she is my friend. 14. _____ time to begin our lesson. 15. _____ no time to write it down, the lesson is nearly over. 16. _____ a fact that he is often absent from school.

20. Memory Work:

Solomon Grundy

Solomon Grundy
Born on Monday,
Christened on Tuesday,
Married on Wednesday,
Ill on Thursday,
Worse on Friday,
Died on Saturday,
Buried on Sunday,
That was the end
of Solomon Grundy.

Thirty days have September,
April, June and November,
All the rest have thirty-one;
February has twenty-eight alone,
Excepting leap-year, that's the time
When February's days are twenty-nine.

Lesson 6

1. Grammar: Many, Much, Few, Little, Some, A lot of. Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives. The Use of the Indefinite Article.

Much	Many – A lot of		
	countables	uncountables	
Positive	a lot (of)/lots of/ many (formal)	a lot (of)/lots of/ much (formal)	There are a lot of trees in the park. There is a lot of cheese in the fridge.
Interrogative	many	much	Are there many shops in York? Did you have much time to do any shopping?
Negative	many	much	There aren't many oranges. I haven't got much money, so I can't buy any.
	a few (= some)/ (very) few (= not many, not enough)	a little (= some)/ (very) little (= not much, not enough)	There were a few boys in the class. Very few students attended the lecture. Very little progress has been made.

Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives

Comparative

She is	taller younger prettier		than	her friend her sister her brother her sister– in– law her aunt.
	more	beautiful tired		

Superlative

She is	the tallest the oldest the busiest		of all the students in her group, of the three girls, of all.
	the most	beautiful capable active	

The Use of the Indefinite Article

Випадки вживання a/an	Приклади та їх переклад українською мовою	
<i>a/an</i> перед злічуваними іменниками вживається:		
1) якщо особа чи предмет згадуються вперше	I can see a car there.	Я бачу там автомобіль.
2) після звороту <i>there is</i>	There is a book on the table.	На столі є книга.
3) якщо іменник є частиною складеного іменного присудка	Her brother is an artist.	Її брат – художник.
4) якщо іменник уживається у функції прикладки зі значенням <i>один з...</i>	Mr. Brown, a manager at our company, spoke at the meeting yesterday.	Містер Браун, один з менеджерів нашої компанії, виступив учора на зборах.
5) якщо <i>a/an</i> має значення <i>будь-який, який-небудь</i>	Give me a pencil, please.	Дій мені який-небудь олівець, будь ласка.
6) якщо <i>a/an</i> має значення <i>один і стоїть перед іменником, який означає час, міру або вагу</i>	How many times a week do you attend your sport club?	Скільки разів на тиждень ти відвідуєш свій спортивний клуб?
7) в окличних реченнях після слова <i>what</i>	Oh, what a nice person he is!	О, яка він гарна людина!
8) після слів <i>such</i> такий, <i>quite</i> зовсім, цілком, <i>rather</i> досить	This is such a difficult sentence to translate it.	Це таке важке для перекладу речення.
9) якщо означеннями до іменника є порядкові числівники у значенні другий, інший, ще один	Suddenly we heard a shot, then a second shot, and a third (one).	Раптом ми почули постріл, потім другий (ще один), і третій (ще один).
10) якщо іменник означає назву професії однієї особи	My brother is a doctor, and I am an engineer.	Мій брат – лікар, а я – інженер.
у сполученнях <i>a little</i> трохи, <i>небагато</i> , <i>a few</i> декілька	If I have a little time today, I'll drop in.	Якщо у мене буде трохи вільного часу, я завітаю до тебе.
перед абстрактними іменниками, що мають описові означення	He has a deep knowledge of the subject.	У нього глибокі знання з предмета.

перед числівниками у значенні іменників, також перед словами <i>dozen</i> дюжина, <i>score</i> рахунок очок у грі	A score of the game is always shown on the scoreboard.	Рахунок у грі завжди показується на табло.
---	--	--

Неозначений артикль *a/an* уживається у сталих словосполученнях:

have a look	подивитися
go for a walk	ходити на прогулянку
be in a hurry	поспішати

Prepositions of time: *at, on, in, since, until/till, by, from ... to/ until, before, after.*

At уживається:

а) для позначення часу:

The program starts at 6 o'clock.

Програма починається о 6 годині.

б) з назвами свят:

We have a holiday at New Year.

У нас канікули на Новий рік.

в) зі словом **weekend**:

Will I see you at the weekend?

Чи побачимося ми у вихідні?

г) для позначення певного моменту:

I'm having a bath at the moment.

Зараз я приймаю ванну.

д) зі словами, що означають прийом їжі:

I'll see you at lunch time.

Побачимося під час ланчу.

е) з іменниками, що означають певний період дня, крім *afternoon* і *evening*:

We left the village at sunrise.

Ми покинули село на світанні.

At noon everything was ready.

Опівдні все було готово.

є) у сталих словосполученнях:

at first

спочатку

at last

нарешиті

at any time

у будь-який час

at once

відразу

at times

іноді

at the age of...

у віці...

On вживається:

а) з назвами днів тижня:

We usually go to my grandmother's house on Sunday.

Ми завжди навідуємо мою бабусю у неділю.

б) з датами:

Bill was born on 6th October.

Біл народився шостого жовтня.

в) зі словом **day** *день* або іменниками, які означають певний період дня, якщо перед ними є назви свят або назви днів тижня:

I was born on St. Valentine's day.

Я народився в День святого Валентина.

In уживається:

а) з назвами місяців:

*It often snows **in January**.*

У січні часто йде сніг.

б) з роками:

*My sister was born **in 1991**.*

Моя сестра народилася у 1991 році.

в) зі століттями:

*We lived **in the twentieth century**.*

Ми жили у двадцятому столітті.

г) з назвами пір року:

*We always go to the sea **in summer**.*

Ми завжди їздимо до моря влітку.

д) для позначення певних періодів часу:

*Would you like to have lived **in the Middle Ages**?*

Хотів би ти жити у середні віки?

*Mini-skirts were first fashionable **in the sixties**.*

Міні-спідниці увійшли в моду в шістдесяті роки.

е) з іменниками, що означають певний період дня і вживаються з означеним артиклем:

*We go to school **in the morning**.*

Ми ходимо до школи вранці.

є) у значенні "через певний час у майбутньому":

*Gina will be here **in five minutes**.*

Джина буде тут через п'ять хвилин.

ж) у словосполученні *in the middle of* у середині з іменниками, що означають певний період дня:

*He got up **in the middle of the night**.*

Він устав серед ночі.

з) у словосполученнях *in the past* у минулому, *in the future* у майбутньому:

***In the past** people had no electricity.*

У минулому люди не мали електрики.

Since означає "з якось часу у минулому":

*I haven't seen her **since last Monday**.*

Я не бачив її з минулого понеділка.

Till (until) – до: уживається для означення часу, обмеженого певним відрізком:

*We waited **until** Cleo left.*

Ми зачекали, поки Клео не пішов.

For – на, протягом вказує на час, його тривалість:

*I have been waiting here **for** an hour.*

Я вже чекаю тут протягом години.

By – до, на, під вказує на час завершення дії, події:

*She had done her homework **by six o'clock**.*

Вона виконала домашнє завдання до шостої години.

From ... to/until – від (з) ... до вказують на певний відрізок часу:

*The shops here open **from 9.00 am to 8.00 pm**.*

Магазини тут відчинено від дев'ятої години ранку до восьмої години вечора.

Before – перед, до вказує на час і означає, що якась дія відбулася раніше за іншу:

*I knew Mary **before** I came to London.*

Я знав Мері до того, як приїхав до

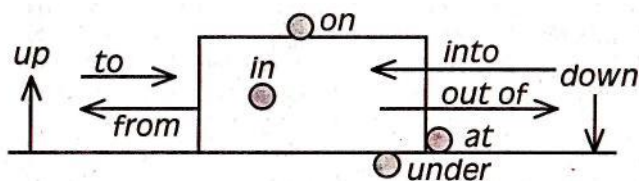
Лондона.

After – після означає, що якась дія відбулась пізніше за іншу:

*I left Africa **after** the war.*

Я покинув Африку після війни.

Prepositions of place



in front of – перед чимось

opposite – напроти

between – між

behind – позаду

upstairs – вверх (сходами)

downstairs – вниз (сходами)

to (on) the left – ліворуч

to (on) the right – праворуч

above – вище, над

below – нижче

near, at, by – біля

at work (school, the university, the library ...) – на роботі (якщо мова іде про місце роботи)

at the airport (meeting, cinema ...) – в аеропорту (та інших громадських місцях)

2. Read and translate the text:

APPEARANCE AND CHARACTER

What traits in people's character do you **appreciate** most and which of them" are most important for you? Does person's **appearance** has something to do with his character? There is no doubt that they are **interconnected**.

When we speak about **somebody's face, figure, hands, feet** we mean his or her appearance. A **face** may be oval, round, square, broad, **sensual** or **worried**. **Features** may be **regular** or **irregular**, a **figure** – **athletic, graceful, slim** or **clumsy** and **plump**. A **person** may be **tall, middle-sized** or **short** and, in general, appearance is **agreeable, winsome** and **gentle** or **plain-looking** and **ugly**.

Speaking about somebody's character we can characterize person as **affable, amiable, good-natured, kind-hearted, sociable, generous, thoughtful, discreet** or, on the contrary, **hard-hearted, ill-natured, reserved,**

uncommunicative, indiscreet, insincere, insensible, rude, greedy, dashing, showy and tactless.

Now I'd like to describe my close friend. **Frankly speaking**, I have a lot of friends who are my former **schoolmates** and boys and girls from my **neighbourhood**. But my **bosom friend** is Ann. She is a pleasant-looking girl of about 18. Ann is not very tall, but she has a strong **attractive body**, she is **pleasantly plump**. She is always very **elegant**, she wears **the clothes of latest fashion**. Her features are very **delicate** and her **charm** is **irresistible**. Ann has **white curly** hair and dark-blue eyes. Her eyelashes are so long and thick, and they seem dark for this reason. Ann's face is **oval** and she has a **turned-up nose**. To cut the long story short – she is a **pretty** girl. But in my opinion, **inner beauty** is more important than physical one. Ann is a **well-bread, jolly** and **kind-hearted** person. She is very **tactful, shy** and **sensitive, emotionally stable** and **witty, generous** and **sophisticated**. She is a girl of **active and cheerful disposition**. Ann is a **pleasant person** to deal with, she never loses her temper. But to my mind, her main feature is that she is a **girl of character**. Her words are entirely in character with her actions. Ann is an **intelligent, bright and quick-witted** girl, she has a big soul and a strong will. One of her lovable traits is her **readiness to help**. She is a helpful person and always tries to do her best to help somebody when he has some problems. She always **manages** to be **amusing** and **cheerful**, energetic and enthusiastic. I must admit, Ann is an easy-going girl, and when sometimes it comes to quarreling, she tries to make it up at once. In a word – my friend has a noble look and bright spirit, she seems a good sort of girl and her character corresponds to her appearance.

3. Word List on subject “Appearance and Character”:

reserved – *скритний, стриманий, замкнутий, нетовариський, обережний*

to appreciate – *оцінювати; (високо) цінувати*

to have something to do with... – *мати яке-небудь відношення ..., мати що-небудь загальне з...*

sensual – *плотський*

graceful – *граціозний, витончений; приємний, елегантний*

clumsy – *незграбний, неповороткий*

winsome – *привабливий*

character – *характер; репутація; особистість; образ, герой; характерна особливість чи ознака*

appearance – *(зовнішній) вигляд, зовнішність, поява*

showy – *ефектний, яскравий, кричущий; строкатий, позбавлений смаку*

features – *риси обличчя*

gentle – *спокійний, покірливий, м'який, добрий; легкий*

agreeable – *приємний, милий*

slim – *стрункий*

affable – привітний, люб'язний, ввічливий

ill-natured – поганої вдачі, злобний, грубий

good-natured – добродушний

generous – благородний, великодушний; щедрий

discreet – стриманий; обачний, розсудливий; небалакучий

on the contrary – навпаки

trait (Br.) – межа (обличчя, характеру), штрих

be interconnected – бути взаємозв'язаним

greedy – жадібний

former schoolmates – колишні однокласники

bosom friend – нерозлучний друг

plump – пухкий

clothes of latest fashion – одяг за останньою модою

eyelashes – вії

turned-up nose – кирпатий ніс

inner beauty – внутрішня краса

tactful – тактовний

emotionally stable – емоційно урівноважений

her words are entirely in character with her actions – її слова повністю відповідають її вчинкам

witty – дотепний

to have a noble look – мати благородний вигляд

to manage – вдаватися

cheerful – веселий

to quarrel – лаятися, сваритися

her character corresponds to her appearance – її зовнішність відповідає її характеру

ugly – потворний, неприємний, бридкий, відштовхуючий

amiable – доброзичливий, привабливий, милий

kind-hearted – добросердий

thoughtful – глибокодумний; задумливий, замислений

earnest – серйозний, поважний; переконаний, щирий

plain-looking – непривабливий

rude – грубий, невихований; суворий, жорстокий, лютий

dashing – відважний, франтівський; людина, що викликає фурор

frankly speaking – відверто кажучи

strong attractive body – сильне, привабливе тіло

neighbourhood – околиці; район

elegant – елегантний

to be well-bred – бути добре вихованим

for this reason – з цієї причини

pretty – симпатична, хороша

delicate features – тонкі риси обличчя

shy – соромливий

to be a girl of character – бути дівчиною з сильним характером

to be a girl of active and cheerful disposition – у дівчинки життєрадісний характер

sophisticated – з витонченим смаком

readiness to help – готовність допомогти

amusing – цікавий, смішний

intelligent – розумний

to make up (with smb.) – помиритися

easy-going – поступливий; добродушно-веселий; безтурботний, легкий, спокійний

Face – Обличчя:

oval – овальне

sensual – чуттєве

sunburned (tanned, browned) – засмагле	blazing with love – випромінююче любов
square – квадратне	worried – стурбоване
long – видовжене	pimpled (pimplly) – прищаве
hard – вольове	hollow – впале
broad – широке	elderly – обличчя літньої людини
thin – худе	clean shaven – гладко вибрите
fleshy – м'ясисте	swarthy – смугле
puffy – одутле	gaunt – виснажене
pork-marked – рябе	pasty – хворобливо-блідне
wrinkled – зморшкувате	round – кругле
frenkled – веснянкувате	bone-structure – овал обличчя

Features – Риси обличчя

delicate – тонкі	regular – правильні
forceful – сильні	irregular – неправильні
clean-cut – різко окреслені	stern – сурові
large (massive) – великі	small – малі (дрібні)
chiselled – точені	

Nose – Ніс:

straight – прямий	crooked – кривий
snub (turned-up) – курносий	aquiline – орлиний
strong (large) – сильний (великий)	flat – приплюснутий
Roman – римський	fleshy – м'ясистий
Grecian – грецький (прямий)	hooked – крючковатий
small – маленький	a bridge of one's nose – переносиця

Mouth – Рот:

small – маленький	stern – суворий
soft – м'який	toothless – беззубий
set – твердий, рішучий	strong – сильний, енергійний
large (wide) – великий (широкий)	vivid – виразний
firm – твердий	

Eyes – Очі:

clear – ясні	long-sighted – дальнозорі
anxious – неспокійні	cross-eyed – косоокі
stanted (oblique) – розкосі	hazel – карі
wide-apart – широко поставлені	blue-eyed – голубоокий
clever – розумні	kind, warm – добрі
narrow – вузькі	under-eye-bags – мішки під очима

bulging – *випуклі*
sunken – *запавші*
near(short)-sighted – *близькорукі*

dark circles – *темні кола*
striking blue (dark, green) – *яскраво-голубі (чорні, зелені)*

Eyebrows – Брови:

thick (bushy) – *густі*
arched – *вигнуті, дугою*
shaggy – *косматі*
to rise one's eyebrows – *піднімати брови*

thin – *тонкі*
pencilled – *тонко окреслені*
penthouse – *навислі*
to frown (knit) one's eyebrows – *хмурити брови*

Eyelashes – Віи:

thick – *густі*
straight – *прямі*
curving – *загнуті*

Ears – Вуха:

huge – *великі*
small – *маленькі*

Lips – Губи:

thick – *товсті*
full – *повні*
thin – *тонкі*
rosy – *розові*
to compress one's lips – *підібгати губи*
to curl one's lips – *презирливо скривитися*

sensual – *чуттєві*
compressed – *стиснені*
painted – *намальовані*
parched – *запечені*
to bite one's lips – *кусати губи*
to purse one's lips – *скласти губи бантиком*

Cheeks – Щоки:

plump (chubby) – *пухлі*
sunken (hollow) – *впалі*
wrinkled – *зморшуваті*
dimples in one's cheeks – *ямочки на щоках*

rosy (ruddy) – *рум'яні*
stubby (unshaven) – *небриті*
pale – *блідні*
cream-white cheeks with a fine rose – *ніжно-біла з рум'янцем шкіра*

Forehead – Чоло:

high (tall) – *високий*
large (open) – *великий (відкритий)*
narrow – *вузький*
low – *низький*

broad – *широкий*
doomed – *випуклий*
retreating – *покатий*

Complexion – Колір обличчя:

fair – *світлий (білий)*
sallow (pale) – *хворобливо-жовтий (блідий)*

swarthy (dark) – *темний*
blooming – *квітучий*
peaches and cream – *квов з молоком*

Jaw – Челюсті:

heavy – важкі
square – квадратні
strong – міцні

Hair – Волосся:

even (lank, staight) – рівне (пряме)	wavy – хвилясте
curly – кучеряве	crisp – завитками
plaited – заплетене в косу	abundant – густе, пишне
rumpled – скуповжене	scanty (thin) – рідке
dishevelled – розпатлане	sleek (smooth) – пригладжене
luxuriant – пишне	silky – шовковисте
bleached – висвітлене	gray – сиве
dyed – фарбоване	grizzling (grizzled) – сивіюче
golden – золотисте	asli-blonde – попелясте
elaborately dressed – добре	black – чорне
bobbed (shingled) – коротко	jet-black – чорне, як смола
стрижене	
dark – темне	red – риже
fair – русе	reddish – рижувате
blond – світле, біляве	hair-cut – стрижка
to have one's hair cul – стригтися	pate – лисина
hair-do – зачіска	beard – борода
to do one's hair – вичісувати волосся	moustache – вуса

Chin – Підборіддя:

massive – масивний	pointed – гостре
round – кругле	double – подвійне
protruding – висунуте	

Teeth – Зуби:

even – рівні	sparse – рідкі
uneven – нерівні	close-set – часті
small (tiny) – дрібні	

Figure – Фігура:

slim (about women) – струнка (тонка)	neat (about women) – витончена (струнка)
slender – струнка (тонка)	plump – повна
lean (about men) – худощава	raunchy – з животиком
slight – хрупкая	stout (fat) – огрядна

posture – осанка

graceful – витончена (граціозна)

well-fed – угодована

lathy – довгов'яза

Height (Stature) – Рост:

average, (medium, middle-sized) – середній

short – низький

tail – високий

diminutive – мініатюрний

Hand – Рука, кисть руки:

shapely – хороша форма

delicate – витончена

tender – ніжна

calloused – мозолиста

hairy – волосата

puffy – пухленька

soft – м'яка

Legs – Ноги:

strong (sturdy) – міцні

slender – стрункі

shapely – хорошої форми, "точені"

long – довгі

short – короткі

plump – повні

Shoulder – Плече:

broad-shouldered – широкоплечий

narrow-shouldered – вузькоплечий

round-shouldered – сутулий

Skin – Кожа:

delicate – ніжна

rough – груба

cream-white – білосніжна

weather-beaten – обвітрена

sunburnt (tanned) – засмагла

sluggish – дрябла

Belly – Живіт:

protruding belly – випуклий живіт

waist – талія

Smile – Посмішка:

heartly – сердечна (щира)

forced – награна

charming – чарівна

happy – щаслива

engaging – приваблива

pleasant – приємна

pleased – задоволена

artificial (insincere) – нещира

wry – крива

sweet – ласкава

broad – широка

sad – сумна

faint – ледве помітна

strained – роблена (штучна)

cunning – хитра

enigmatic – загадкова

winning – приваблива

Voice – Голос:

tuneful – мелодійний
crisp – дзвінкий

cracked – хриплий
to speak in a loud (low) voice –
говорити голосно (тихо)

Appearance – Зовнішність:

beautiful (about women) – красива
(про жінок) **handsome (about men)** – красива (про
чоловіків)

agreeable – приємна

engaging – чарівна

pretty (about women) – симпатична
(про жінок) **genial** – сердечна, привітна
winsome – приваблива

Exercise 4. Fill in: a, an or some where necessary:

When David went to 1) a travel agent's to ask for 2) _____ information about cruises to South America he was given 3) _____ brochure and told that if he wanted to go, he would have to make 4) _____ booking as soon as possible, as the next cruise was leaving in 5) _____ fortnight. He looked at the brochure and, after 6) _____ thought, decided to go, provided he could make 7) _____ arrangement with his boss to get 8) _____ time off. He gave the travel agent 9) _____ money as a deposit, then went to his office as he had 10) _____ important work to do. After 11) _____ hour or so, his boss came in and David asked him if he could take 12) _____ three weeks off as he hadn't had 13) _____ holiday for nearly 14) _____ year. His boss was quite agreeable, though he had at first had 15) _____ doubts about letting David go for such 16) _____ long time. In the end he agreed to give him 17) _____ entire month off, and wished him 18) _____ wonderful holiday.

Exercise 5. Fill in the definite or indefinite article if necessary:

1. _____ Russia occupies _____ eastern half of _____ Europe and _____ northern third _____ of Asia. 2. _____ climate of _____ northern part of _____ Russia is severe. 3. In _____ European part of _____ Russia _____ summer is warm and sunny. 4. This winter _____ Crimea and _____ Caucasus. 6. _____ Commonwealth of Independent States is one of _____ biggest countries of _____ whole world. 7. Tbilisi is _____ capital of _____ Georgia. 8. I want to go to _____ Alma-Ata some day. 9. _____ best way to know and understand _____ people of other countries is to meet them in their own homes. 10. Is Australia _____ island or _____ continent? 11. _____ Black Sea is in _____ South. 12. There are six continents in _____ world, aren't there? 13. France is to _____ northwest of Italy.

Exercise 6. Fill in prepositions if necessary:

A. 1. Pass _____ me the salt, please. 2. Pass the salt _____ me. 3. Give the bread _____ me. 4. Show this text _____ the teacher. 5. Show _____ the teacher this book. 6. He is going to come _____ half an hour. 7. Look _____ the boy. How dirty he is! 8. I see a new wall-newspaper _____ the corridor. 9. The children are playing

_____ the garden. 10. Are you going _____ home? – No, I am going _____ the library. 11. They have breakfast _____ 8 o'clock _____ the morning. 12. I dine _____ 3 o'clock _____ the afternoon. 13. What do you see _____ this picture? 14. Excuse me, may I go _____? 15. Please, come _____. We are just beginning our lesson. 16. The bell is ringing, the students are coming _____ the room. The teacher is entering _____ the room. The bell is ringing and the students are leaving _____ the room. He is leaving _____ St. Petersburg, you know.

B. 1. Will you wait _____ me, I'll come _____ a minute. 2. Are you ready _____ the answer? 3. Have some fruit _____ pleasure. 4. Help yourself _____ some fruit, please. 5. I prefer an apple _____ ice-cream. 6. The children are ready _____ breakfast. They are waiting _____ their father. 7. Let's have some herring to begin _____. 8. What do you say _____ an ice-cream? 9. As _____ me I prefer a piece of cake _____ sweets. 10. A waitress is coming _____ our table. What shall we order? 11. The pudding is _____ your taste, I hope. 12. Going to the river is the question, it's too cold to bathe today. 13. Father usually comes _____ home _____ time. 14. We must pay the waitress _____ the dinner. 15. I'm fond _____ vegetables and meat.

Exercise 7. Fill in prepositions if necessary and retell the text:

Tom and Nick are going _____ the canteen to have dinner. It is only half _____ one but there are many people _____ the canteen already. Some _____ them are reading newspapers, others are eating their dinner. The friends always enjoy _____ their meals there.

They go _____ a small round table _____ the window, take a menu-card _____ the next table and begin to read it. Tom does not want to have any soup today. He is going to take some roast beef and vegetables. Nick takes some cabbage soup _____ himself, some fried fish and potatoes. He goes over ... the buffet and soon comes back _____ some tomato and cucumber salad. Then a waitress comes _____ their table and brings them the soup, meat and fish. She also brings some mustard, pepper and salt and puts a knife, fork, spoon _____ the table _____ front _____ each person.

Nick wants to have some ice-cream _____ dessert but as it is not ready yet, he takes a piece _____ cake and a glass _____ tea. Tom orders some fruit as he always prefers fruit _____ cakes and ice-cream.

The boys are usually satisfied _____ their meals _____ this canteen. So they finish their dessert and pay the waitress _____ the dinner. Then they put _____ their coats and go the street.

Exercise 8. Fill in prepositions if necessary:

1. When we go _____ foreign countries we see and learn a lot _____ things. 2. She says she likes to go _____ the Caucasus _____ winter. 3. Japan is a country _____ the western part _____ the Pacific Ocean. It consists _____ many islands, large and small. Some _____ them are only a few miles long. 4. The Crimea is _____ the South _____ our country. 5. My sister lives _____ the Far East. 6. The Baltic Sea is _____ the West. 7. Show us the longest river _____ Russia _____ the map. 8. Slovakia is _____ the centre _____ Europe. 9. St. Petersburg is _____ the north– west _____

Moscow. 10. Thousands _____ students _____ all nationalities study _____ the institutes _____ our country. 11. One _____ the students _____ our group is _____ Rumania. 12. What's the capital _____ Rumania? 13. What language do they speak _____ Bulgaria.

Exercise 9. Fill in prepositions:

1. Don't be late. Come _____ nine o'clock. 2. What time is it now? It is half _____ six. 3. We are going to leave _____ a quarter _____ ten. 4. It is twelve o'clock now. Come here in ten minutes, ten minutes _____ twelve. 5. Is it a quarter _____ three? In a quarter of an hour, _____ three o'clock we must be _____ the University. 6. He must work _____ seven _____ eleven o'clock. 7. They live _____ the North _____ our country.

Exercise 10. Translate the following into English using the preposition at:

1. О десятій годині. 2. О сьомій годині. 3. О дванадцятій годині. 4. У половині першої. 5. У половині третьої. 6. У половині одинадцятої. 7. Чверть на шосту. 8. О чверть на восьму. 9. О чверть на десяту. 10. Без чверті година. 11. Без чверті три. 12. Без чверті чотири. 13. О двадцять хвилин на дев'яту. 14. Без десяти дванадцять. 15. Без двадцяти п'яти п'ять. 16. О десять хвилин на сьому. 17. Без п'яти шість. 18. Без трьох хвилин шоста. 19. Без семи дев'ята. 20. Без двадцяти восьми третя.

Exercise 11. Fill in: a lot, much or many.

Jim: You must be working 1) a lot at the moment, I've hardly seen you.

Mary: There's 2) _____ of work at the office and I've been doing too 3) _____.

Jim: How 4) _____ hours are you doing each day?

Mary: About ten, which is far too 5) _____.

Jim: So you haven't been doing 6) _____ except working?

Mary: Well, I've been going to the gym, but not as 7) _____ times as I'd like.

Jim: How 8) _____ longer will this go on?

Mary: Only two more weeks, I hope.

Jim: You must be under 9) _____ of stress.

Mary: A bit, I'll be glad when it's over.

Jim: We should go out when you've finished.

Mary: Yes. there are so 10) _____ other things I want to tell you.

Exercise 12. Underline the correct item:

How 1) *many/much* centuries ago were people walking around on the earth? What would they think about modern life? There must be thousands of things they would find strange. 2) *Much/A lot of* aspects of life have changed greatly. For example, there are 3) *many/much* fewer green areas than in those days and the 4) *numbers/number* of animals is 5) *many/much* smaller too. Also, what about the thousands of modern appliances we use? What would they find the most confusing, a television or a camera? A refrigerator or a washing machine? There are 6) *plenty*

of/a large amount of unusual things! What would people from the past have thought about various means of modern transport, such as cars, trains, ships and aeroplanes? There were 7) *many/much* centuries between the invention of the wheel and the birth of the modern engine. Could people have imagined then that man would one day fly? What about space travel? Even within the first half of this century, rockets existed only in the realms of science fiction. Perhaps from the 8) *numbers/number* of our modern inventions there is one which people from the past would have appreciated greatly and would have benefited from – modern medicine. Of course, 9) *a lot of/a lot* human inventions would probably horrify people from the past. What would they think about nuclear bombs and guns? We have created so 10) *many/much* weapons! And with all the new technology we have, wouldn't they find it 11) *a few/a bit* strange that we still wear animal skins like leather as clothes? If we look at our lives from their point of view, 12) *the most/most* things seem odd. But how would we find life if we went back to the past and had to live without all our modern inventions and technology.

Exercise 13. Fill in the blanks with some, any, not any, much, many, not much, not many, very little, a little, very few, a few:

1. Are there ____ college-graduates among your friends? – Yes, there are ____ . 2. Are there ____ students in the next classroom? – No, there aren't ____ . 3. I haven't got time, I must hurry. 4. I have time and can help you. 5. There are ____ cups on the table but there aren't glasses. 6. I have very ____ time and can't stay any longer. 7. We know very ____ about it. 8. I have ____ questions to ask. 9. Very ____ people know Doctor Sandford. 10. There are girls in the family, are there? 11. There's very ____ chalk at the blackboard go and fetch ____ . 12. There are ____ students in the hall, are there? 13. There isn't ____ tea in the tea-pot. 14. There isn't ____ paper in the box, I need more. 15. There aren't ____ pencils in the box, don't take ____ . 16. It's a secret. Very ____ people know about it. 17. Please add ____ more tea in my cup.

Exercise 14. Compare the objects according to the given model:

Model: A lemon – an apple (sour).

A lemon is sourer than an apple, An apple is not so sour as a lemon. An apple is not as sour as a lemon.

1. The Black Sea – the White Sea (warm). 2. Oil – water (light). 3. Bulgaria – Russia (small). 4. Butter – milk (cheap). 5. Stone – wood (heavy). 6. Carrots – cucumbers (useful). 7. India – Japan (large). 8. Meat – vegetables (expensive). 9. Japanese – Spanish (difficult). 10. The Indian Ocean – the Arctic Ocean (warm).

Exercise 15. Put the adjectives in brackets in the required degree of comparison:

1. My sister is much (old) than myself. 2. This is (warm) room in the house. 3. Her daughter is a little (tall) than I but much (thin). 4. It was (early) than I thought, only six o'clock. 5. Where is (near) shop? 6. He is (old) son in the family. 7. What's (late) news? 8. Only when (late) guest left the room she sighed freely. 9.

Cardiff is (large) town in Wales. 10. She is much (useful) at home than here. 11. She is (beautiful) girl we have ever seen. 12. He is one of (good) engineers at the plant. 13. Today your answer is (bad) than last week. 14. John is my (old) friend in this place. 15. This is (funny) story in the whole collection. 16. I didn't like (late) chapter in this book. 17. Your composition must be as (short) as possible. 18. He was not so (talented) as we had expected. 19. They always choose (easy) way. 20. Which is (high) mountain in the world? 21. What can be (sweet) than honey?

16. Write a topic about your friend using guided essay/story:

- name, relation, age
- appearance – eyes, hair, face
- special features, figure, dress
- study, work
- hobbies, interests
- games
- personal qualities
- faults
- conclusion

17. a) Read and act out the dialogue.

Alex meets a group of foreign students.

Alex: Excuse me, what country are you from?

Voitek: I am from Poland.

Alex: Do you live in Warsaw?

Voitek: No, I don't. I live in a small town in the North of Poland. Let me introduce you to my friend Lucy.

Alex: I am ever so glad to meet you.

Voitek: Lucy is from France, from Paris. She is French. By the way, do you speak French?

Alex: I am afraid I don't. I speak only two foreign languages, English and Spanish. And I prefer to speak Spanish, as I know it much better than English.

Voitek: Oh, that's fine! Lucy speaks Spanish rather well. Her mother is from South America. As for me I can't speak Spanish but I understand nearly everything. Lucy and I are pen-friends.

Alex: Would you like to join me and my fellow-students? We can have a good time together.

Voitek: That'd be lovely.

Alex: Come on, then.

b) Make up dialogues:

- 1) Describe a person who is sitting next to you.
- 2) Describe a suspect to the police.

Lesson 7

1. Grammar: The Future Indefinite Tense. Reflexive Pronouns. The Use of the Indefinite Article.

The Future Indefinite Tense

I We	shall (shan't)	go to the country go to the theatre leave for St. Petersburg	next Saturday. tomorrow. on Sunday. next week.
He (She) You They	will (won't)		
Shall	I We		
Will	he (she) you they		

To Have + Infinitive in the Future Indefinite Tense

I We	shall (shan't)	have	to do it tomorrow. to work in the garden tomorrow morning. to rewrite the text. to help them.
He (She) You' They	will (won't)		
Shall	I we		
Will	he (she) you they		

To Be Able in the Future Indefinite Tense

I We	shall (shan't)	be able	to do it tomorrow. to translate this article tomorrow. to repair the radio-set alone. to practice this text in the laboratory.
He (She) You They	will (won't)		
Shall	I we		
Will	he (she) you they		

Reflexive Pronouns

1. Зворотні займенники у третій особі однини мають граматичні категорії числа (Number), особи (Person) і роду (Gender):

Число (Number)	Особа (Person)	Рід (Gender)	Зворотні займенники (Reflexive Pronouns)	Українські еквіваленти	
				Емфатична форма	Зворотні займенники
Однина (Singular)	Перша	Чоловічий Жіночий Середній	myself	сам	себе, собі, собою, (на) собі
	Друга		yourself	сам, сама	
	Третя		himself	сам	
Множина (Plural)			herself	сама	
			itself	сам, сама, саме	
	Перша		ourselves	самі	себе, собі, собою, (на) собі
	Друга		yourselves		
Третя		themselves			

2. В англійській мові є два взаємні займенники:

each other один одного та *one another* один одного.

3. Вживання *each other* частіше передбачає тільки дві особи, *one another* – дві або більш ніж дві особи:

They love each other.

Вони кохають один одного.

The members of the family should respect one another.

Члени однієї родини мають поважати один одного.

The Use of the Definite Article

1. Означений артикль *the* із загальними назвами:

Випадки вживання <i>the</i>	Приклади та їх переклад українською мовою	
Означений артикль із загальними назвами вживається:		
1) якщо із ситуації або попереднього досвіду зрозуміло, про яку особу, предмет, явище чи речовину йдеться	The milk in the glass has turned sour.	Молоко у стакані прокисло.
2) перед іменником з обмежувальним означенням, що вказує, про який саме предмет йде мова	Paris is the capital of France.	Париж – столиця Франції.

3) перед іменником в однині, що означає не окремий предмет, а весь клас предметів у цілому	The telephone was invented in the 19 th century.	Телефон було винайдено у ХІХ сторіччі.
4) перед іменником з означенням, вираженим прикметником у найвищому ступені порівняння або порядковим числівником	Our planet is the most beautiful planet in the space.	Наша планета – найгарніша планета у космосі.
5) перед іменниками, що позначають предмети та явища, єдині у своєму роді (<i>the sun, the sky, the Acropolis, the moon, the world, the universe</i> тощо)	When we went out, the moon was shining.	Коли ми вийшли, світив місяць.
6) перед іменниками, що стоять після слів <i>most of, one of, some of, many of, each of, none of</i>	Each of the boys took part in the competitions.	Кожен а хлопчиків брав участь у змаганнях.
7) перед іменниками з означеннями, вираженими словами <i>same</i> той самий, <i>wrong</i> не той, <i>right</i> той, <i>very same</i> той, <i>following</i> такий, <i>next</i> наступний по порядку, <i>last</i> останній	I hope the next task won't be so difficult.	Сподіваюся, що наступне завдання не буде таким важким.
8) перед іменниками у ролі обставин місця	It was very dark in the forest.	У лісі було дуже темно.
9) перед іменником у ролі прикладки, що підкреслює значущість особи, до якої він відноситься	Jack London, the famous American writer, traveled much.	Джек Лондон, знаменитий американський письменник, багато подорожував.
10) перед субстантивованими прикметниками і дієприкметниками	Why doesn't the government do more to help the unemployed?	Чому уряд не зробить більше, щоб допомогти безробітним?
11) перед іменником <i>people</i> у значенні <i>народ</i>	The Ukrainian people are very tolerant.	Український народ дуже толерантний.
12) перед іменником, що означає назву нації як народу (<i>the English, the Irish, the Chinese, the Ukrainians</i> і т.д.)	The Japanese are famous for their scientific inventions.	Японці знамениті своїми науковими винаходами.

13) перед іменниками <i>doctor, dentist, garage</i> та ін. у значенні <i>свій лікар, свій дантист, свій гараж</i> і т.д.	The garage is near the house.	Його гараж знаходиться біля (його) будинку.
14) перед іменниками, що означають титули, ранги, якщо їх уживають без власного імені	The President proposed to reduce taxes.	Президент запропонував знизити податки.
15) перед назвами сторін світу, якщо вони вживаються у значенні регіону, місцевості	The North of Great Britain is a very beautiful area.	Північ Великої Британії – дуже гарний край.
16) перед іменниками, що означають назви музичних інструментів (<i>the piano, the guitar</i> тощо)	Have you bought the guitar?	Ти купив гітару?
17) перед іменниками, що означають назви політичних партій (<i>the Democrats, the Conservatives</i> тощо)	The Democrats nominated their candidates to the Parliament.	Демократи висунули своїх кандидатів до парламенту.
18) перед іменниками, що означають державні служби (<i>the police, the army, the fire-brigade</i> тощо)	The police should pay more attention to the people who break the rules while crossing the street.	Поліції слід приділити більш уваги тим людям, які порушують правила при переході вулиці.

2. Означений артикль *the* вживається у сталих словосполученнях:

the other day	нещодавно
to tell the truth	правду кажучи
by the way	між іншим
on the whole	в цілому
in the original	в оригіналі
the more the better	чим більше, тим краще
the sooner the better	чим скоріше, тим краще

3. Означений артикль *the* перед власними назвами:

Випадки вживання <i>the</i>	Приклади та їх переклад українською мовою
Означений артикль <i>the</i> уживається:	
1) перед прізвищами у множині, що означають усю родину	I haven't met the Browns since they returned from London. Я не зустрічався з Браунами з того часу, як вони повернулися з Лондона.

2) перед іменем або прізвищем в однині, яке мовець хоче з певних обставин виділити серед інших	That's not the George Lamb I knew.	Це не той Джордж Лемб, якого я знала.
3) перед назвами готелів, ресторанів, барів, магазинів, банків, театрів, кінотеатрів, музеїв, галерей, якщо в цих назвах немає імені їх засновника	The Bombay Restaurant is very expensive. We are proud of the National Theatre. The Odeon cinema shows new films.	Ресторан "Бомбей" дуже дорогий. Ми пишаємося Національним театром. Кінотеатр "Одеон" демонструє нові фільми.
4) перед назвами будинків, палаців та інших споруд, якщо в цих назвах є прийменник <i>of</i>	Have you ever seen the Great Wall of China?	Чи бачив ти коли-небудь Велику Китайську стіну?
5) перед назвами газет	He reads the Times regularly.	Він регулярно читає газету "Таймз".
6) перед назвами кораблів, пароплавів	We travelled on board the Oriana.	Ми подорожували на кораблі "Оріана".
7) перед назвами державних установ і організацій	The Kyiv City Council is in the centre of the city.	Київська міська рада розташована у центрі міста.
9) перед назвами океанів, морів, рік, каналів, проток	The Indian Ocean	Індійський океан
10) перед назвами гірських хребтів (ці назви завжди вживаються у множині)	The Carpathians The Alps The Himalayas	Карпати Альпи Гімалаї
11) перед назвами груп островів (ці назви завжди вживаються у множині)	The British Isles The Bahamas The Canary Islands	Британські острови Багами Канарські острови
12) перед назвами країн і штатів, які включають слова <i>union</i> союз, <i>republic</i> республіка, <i>kingdom</i> королівство, <i>state</i> штат, <i>emirates</i> емірати	The United Kingdom The United States (of America) The United Arab Emirates The Republic of Ireland	Сполучене Королівство Сполучені Штати (Америки) Об'єднані Арабські Емірати Республіка Ірландія
13) перед назвами регіонів, територій.	The Middle East The Far East	Середній Схід Далекий Схід
14) перед назвами пустель	The Sahara Desert	Сахара
15) перед назвами країн, що мають форму множини	The Netherlands	Нідерланди

2. Read and translate the following text:

TRAVELLING

Modern life is impossible without **travelling**. True, we often get tired of the same **surroundings** and **daily routine**. Hence some **relaxation** is essential to **restore** our mental and physical resources. That is why the best place of relaxation, in my opinion, is the one where you have never been before. And it is by means of travelling that you get to that place.

To understand how true it is you've got to go to a **railway station**, a sea or a river port or an **airport**. There you are most likely to see hundreds of people hurrying to board a **train**, a **ship** or a **plane**.

To be on the safe side and to spare yourself the trouble of standing long hours in the line, you'd better book tickets in advance. All you have to do is to ring up the **airport** or the railway station booking office and they will send your **ticket** to your place. And, of course, before getting off you have to make your preparations. You should settle all your businesses and visit your friends and relatives. On the eve of your departure you should pack your things in a suitcase. When the day of your departure comes you call a taxi and go to the airport or the railway station.

For some time you stay in the **waiting-room**. If you are hungry you take some **refreshments**. In some time the **loudspeaker announces** that the train or the plane is in and the **passengers** are invited to take their seats. If you travel by train you find your **carriage**, enter the corridor and find your **berth**. It may be a lower berth, which is more convenient or an upper one. You put your suitcase into a special box under the lower seat. Then you arrange your smaller **packages** on the **racks**. In some time the train starts off. Travelling by train is slower than by plane, but it has its advantages. You can see the country you are travelling through and enjoy the beautiful nature. It may be an **express train** or a **passenger** one. There is no doubt it's much more convenient to travel by an express train, because it does not stop at small stations and it takes you less time to get to your destination.

But if **you are in a hurry** and want to save your time you'd better travel by plane, because it is the fastest way of travelling. After the **procedure of registration** you board the plane at last. You sit down in a comfortable **armchair** and in a few minutes you are already above the clouds. The land can be seen below between the clouds and it looks like a geographical map. After the plane gained its

regular height the **stewardess** brings in some mineral water. You can sit and read a book or a magazine, look through the window to watch the passing clouds change their colour from white to black.

Some people prefer to travel by ship when possible. A **sea voyage** is very **enjoyable, indeed**. But to my mind the best way of travelling is by car. The advantages of this way of spending your holiday are that you don't have to buy a ticket, you can stop wherever you wish, where there is something interesting to see. And for this reason travelling by car is popular for pleasure trips while people usually take a train or a plane when they are travelling on business.

When you get tired of relaxation, you become home-sick and feel like returning home. You realize that "East or West – home is best," as the saying goes.

3. Word list on the Subject "Travelling":

relaxation – відпочинок від роботи, перепочинок, розвага

hence – звідси, отже

to board a train (ship, etc.) – сісти на потяг (корабель і т.д.)

railway station – залізничний вокзал

to be essential – бути необхідним

ship – корабель, судно, пароплав

to be on the safe side – про всяк випадок

to stand in the line – стояти в черзі

to make one's preparations – готуватися

on the eve – напередодні

suitcase – валіза

waiting-room – зал чекання

passenger – пасажир

berth – місце (для лежання)

rack – сітка

to be in a hurry – поспішати

height – висота

to become home-sick – нудьгувати по дому

routine – певний режим, заведений порядок, рутинна

surroundings – околиці, середовище

to restore – відновлювати, відшкодовувати, відроджувати

airport – аеропорт

train – поїзд, потяг

plane – літак

to spare oneself the trouble of – позбутися турбот

in advance – завчасно

to settle one's business – влаштувати справи

to pack – вкладати речі, пакуватися

departure – від'їзд, відправлення

to announce – повідомляти

carriage – вагон

package – пакет, пакунок

destination – мета призначення; мета (подорожі)

procedure – процедура

for this reason – з цієї причини

to feel like returning home – хотіти повернутися додому

Travelling by Train

railway ticket; railroad ticket – залізничний квиток

one-way ticket; single ticket – квиток в один кінець

reduced fare ticket – *пільговий квиток*
ticket machine – *автомат з продажу квитків*
child's ticket – *дитячий квиток*
adult fare – *вартість квитка для дорослого*
single fare – *вартість одного квитка*
to buy a ticket in advance – *купити квиток заздалегідь*
carriage; car – *вагон*
luggage-van – *товарний вагон*
train station, railroad station, railway station – *вокзал (залізничний)*
cancellation – *повернення квитка*
arrivals and departures board, time-table board – *дошка розкладів*
ticket office – *квиткова каса*
ticket collector – *контролер*
to change trains – *робити пересадку*
slow train – *звичайний поштово-пасажирський потяг*
porter; red cap (Am.) – *носії*
passenger train – *пасажирський потяг*
through train – *потяг прямого сполучення*
local train – *приміський потяг*

round trip ticket – *квиток туди й назад*
first class ticket – *квиток у першому класі*
return ticket – *зворотний квиток*
to get in line for a ticket – *ставати в чергу за квитком*
change of trains, transfer – *пересадка*
car for non-smokers – *вагон для тих, хто не палить*
smoking car – *вагон для курців*
child fare – *вартість дитячого квитка*
dining-car, restaurant car – *вагон-ресторан*
sleeping car – *спальний вагон*
train times / train schedule – *розклад руху потягів*
compartment – *купе*
fare – *плата за проїзд*
to go by train – *їхати потягом*
to miss the train – *спізнитися на потяг*
track – *шлях, коля*
to catch the train – *встигти на потяг*
long distance train; sleeper train – *потяг далекого сполучення*
fast train – *швидкий потяг*

Travelling by Plane

pilot – *пілот, льотчик*
cockpit – *місце льотчика в кабіні*
call button – *кнопка виклику бортпроводника(-ці)*
to pay for excess luggage – *сплачувати за зайву вагу*
to take-off – *злітати*
window seat – *місце біля ілюмінатора*
flight – *політ*
delayed flight – *рейс із запізненням*
boarding – *посадка (у літак)*
aisle seat – *місце біля проходу*

mechanic – *бортмеханік*
excess luggage – *зайва вага*
stewardess; flight attendant – *бортпроводник(-ця)*
airline – *повітряна лінія; авіакомпанія*
altitude – *висота*
unscheduled stop – *вимушена посадка*
non-stop flight – *безпосадочний політ*
landing – *посадка, приземлення*
boarding pass – *посадковий талон*

domestic flight – рейс на внутрішніх лініях

check-in – реєстрація пасажирів

shuttle flight – човниковий рейс

to taxi over the airfield – вирулювати на старт

scheduled flight – рейс за розкладом

to circle over the airfield – кружляти над посадковим полем аеродрому

check-in desk (counter) – стійка реєстрації

direct flight – прямий рейс

seat belt – ремінь безпеки

to be air sick – страждати на повітряну хворобу

aircraft – авіація, літак

air sickness – повітряна хвороба

to fasten a seat belt – застібнути ремінь безпеки

A Sea Voyage

quay – причал, набережна (для причалу судів)

gangway – трап

steward – стюард, черговий по каютах

aft – кормова частина судна

harbour – порт, гавань

pitch – кильова хитавиця

to be sea-sick – страждати на морську хворобу

to weigh anchor – відходити, зніматися з якоря

steerage – закрита палуба

captain – капітан (корабля)

lighthouse – маяк

liner – рейсовий пароплав

sailing ship – вітрильне судно

cargo-ship – вантажний корабель

to take a cruise – подорожувати морем

anchor – якір

to raise the anchor – зніматися з якоря

crew – екіпаж корабля

mate – штурман, помічник капітана

to moor – пришвартовуватися), ставати на якір

deck – палуба

amidship (amidships) – середина судна

forward – носова частина судна

dock – причал

roll – бортова хитавиця

cruise – подорож по морю (з метою відпочинку і розваги)

captain's bridge – капітанський місток

lounge – салон

life-boat – рятувальний човен

hold – трюм

boat – човен, пароплав

river steamer – річковий пароплав

steamer – пароплав

to change for a boat – пересісти на човен (пароплав)

to cast the anchor – кидати якір

to be (to lie) at anchor – стояти на якорі

to be bad (good) sailor – погано (добре) переносити морські подорожі

Exercise 4. (based on the topic "Travelling"). Fill in the missing words:

1. Hence some _____ is essential to restore our mental and _____ resources.
2. To understand how true it is you've got to go to the _____ station, a sea or a river _____ or an airport.
3. To be on the safe side and to spare yourself the trouble of standing long hours in the _____, you'd better book tickets in _____.

4. And, of course, before getting off you have to make your _____.
5. You should _____ all your business and visit your friends and _____.
6. On the eve of your _____ you should pack your things in a _____.
7. If you are hungry you take some _____.
8. If you travel by train you find your _____, enter the corridor and find your _____.
9. You put your _____ into a special box under the lower seat.
10. Travelling by train is _____ than by plane, but it has its _____.
11. There is no doubt it's much more convenient to travel by train, because it doesn't stop at small _____, and it takes less time to get to your _____.
12. But if you are in a hurry and want to _____ your time you'd better travel by _____, because it is the fastest way of _____.
13. A sea _____ is very enjoyable, indeed.
14. And for this _____ travelling by car is _____ for pleasure trips while people usually take a train or a plane when they are traveling on _____.
15. When you get tired of relaxation, you become _____ and feel like returning home.

Exercise 5. Match each word in the left-hand column with the best meaning in the right-hand column. Place the letter of the best definition in the space provided:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> 1) carnage | a) a rather long journey, especially by water. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 2) sea voyage | b) a sea-voyage from port to port especially as a pleasure trip. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 3) compartment | c) bags, trucks, etc. and their contents taken on a journey. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 4) crew | d) portable flat-sided case for clothes, used when travelling. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 5) railway | e) travelling by getting free rides in passing automobiles and walking between rides. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 6) tour | f) a journey, an excursion; a brief one, made by land or water. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 7) luggage | g) road or track laid by rails on which trains run. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 8) anchor | h) wheeled vehicle for passengers on a railway train. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 9) hitch-hiking | i) one of several separate divisions of a structure, especially of a railway carriage or coach. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 10) suitcase | j) all the persons working on a ship, aircraft, train, etc. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 11) cruise | k) heavy piece of iron with a ring at one end, to which a cable is fastened, used for keeping a ship fast to the sea bottom or a balloon to the ground. |

Exercise 6. Write questions to the parts of the sentences in bold type:

1. He will begin his lectures next month.
2. My brother will go to India for

six months. 3. My sister will go to the South because of her child's illness. 4. It will take me 20 minutes to get to her house. 5. I shall be waiting for you at the station. 6. It will take two years to build this theatre. 7. It was snowing hard when I got up this morning. 8. I shall be able to translate this article next week. 9. He will see her at 9 o'clock tomorrow. 10. I shall get up tomorrow at 6 o'clock. 11. He will stay in the country for two months. 12. I shall be able to go to the canteen after the lesson. 13. I shall have to repair my aunt's iron tomorrow. 14. I shall be having dinner soon.

Exercise 7. Translate what is given in brackets using the Present Indefinite or the Future Indefinite:

1. You will enjoy yourself if you (поїдете на Кавказ). 2. Ask him if he (поїде на Кавказ). 3. We shan't be able to go out if (буде сильний дощ). 4. They say (збирається на дощ); the clouds are gathering. 5. I don't know when he (прийде); the weather is so nasty. 6. Tell him to wait when he (прийде). I may be late. 7. Tell Mother we (не швидко повернемося), it's much too far away. 8. Tell Mother not to worry if we (не швидко повернемося); it's much too far away. 9. I'll talk to him about it if I (побачу його сьогодні). 10. I'm not sure if I (побачу його сьогодні). 11. She will take the children out for a walk if she (закінчити роботу раніше). 12. I don't know if she (закінчити роботу раніше); she has got a lot to do. 13. The rain won't do him any harm if he (одягне плащ). 14. Ask him if he (одягне плащ); it looks like rain.

Exercise 8. Fill in: will or be going to:

A: Have you decided where to go for your holidays?

B: Yes, I 'm going to... tour Spain.

A: We've almost run out of petrol.

B: Don't worry. We _____ get some on the way home.

A: Does your tooth really hurt?

B: Yes, I _____ see the dentist tomorrow.

A: Did you buy any stamps?

B: I forgot to, but I _____ get some now if you like.

A: Have you heard about Sharon?

B: Yes. She _____ have a baby.

A: When did you last speak to Susan?

B: Oh weeks ago, but I _____ meet her tonight.

A: Your car is very dirty.

B: I know. My son _____ wash it this afternoon.

A: Have you found your bracelet yet?

B: No, but I'm sure I _____ find it when I tidy my room.

A: Do you know what the weather forecast is for tomorrow?

B: No, but I expect it _____ be warmer than today.

A: Shall we go out tonight?

B: Sorry! I _____ eat at the Chinese restaurant with Paul.

A: What do you want to eat?

B: I _____ have a hamburger and some chips, please.

A: Are you watching TV tonight?

B: Yes, I _____ watch the interview with the Queen.

Exercise 9. Fill in the correct Present or Future forms:

We 1) *...re going* _____ (go) on holiday next Friday. The plane 2) _____ (leave) at 5.00 am, so we 3) _____ (sunbathe) in Bermuda by lunchtime! We've got a lot of luggage and neither of us wants to drive so we 4) _____ (get) a taxi to the airport. My sister has never flown before so she 5) _____ (probably/be) quite nervous. I 6) _____ (have to) sit by her and hold her hand all the time. By the time we get there, we 7) _____ (fly) for quite a long time and so we 8) _____ (be) quite tired. However, I hope we 9) _____ (recover) by 8 o'clock, in time to go to the welcoming party!

Exercise 10. Fill in: must or have to:

"Welcome on behalf of Newton Industries. I'd like to explain a few of the factory rules. Mr Newton has said we 1) *... have to...* wear overalls at all times. He wants us to arrive at 8 am and we 2) _____ clock in. There is a possibility of working overtime but you 3) _____ decide whether you want to work extra hours. Mr Newton insists that we 4) _____ have fifteen-minute breaks every three or four hours but we 5) _____ choose when we would like those breaks. There is a problem with parking. The city insists we 6) _____ use the public garage. They believe parking on the grass is too damaging to public property and I 7) _____ say I agree. Finally, as far as health insurance is concerned, you 8) _____ register as soon as possible. Are there any questions?"

Exercise 11. Fill in: mustn't or needn't:

Tom,

*Thanks for offering to chair tomorrow's meeting for me. Apart from Sally and Dave, the sales staff 1) *... needn't...* attend, but the Personnel people 2) _____ miss it, as several matters concern them. You 3) _____ mention the new offices - we can deal with that later and you 4) _____ discuss the changes in the computer course timetables since they're not urgent. Don't forget that you 5) _____ mention the visit by the inspectors - we don't want people panicking. You 6) _____ forget to bring up the matter of the Smithson contract, and you also 7) _____ leave out the new manager's appointment. You 8) _____ go into details unless people have questions. But remember you 9) _____ give anyone the idea that their job is at risk because of this. Make it clear that employees 10) _____ speak unless they want to. Last but not least, you 11) _____ mention the staff party - Mr Jones wants to announce that himself. By the way, you 12) _____ take notes, as my secretary will be there to do that.*

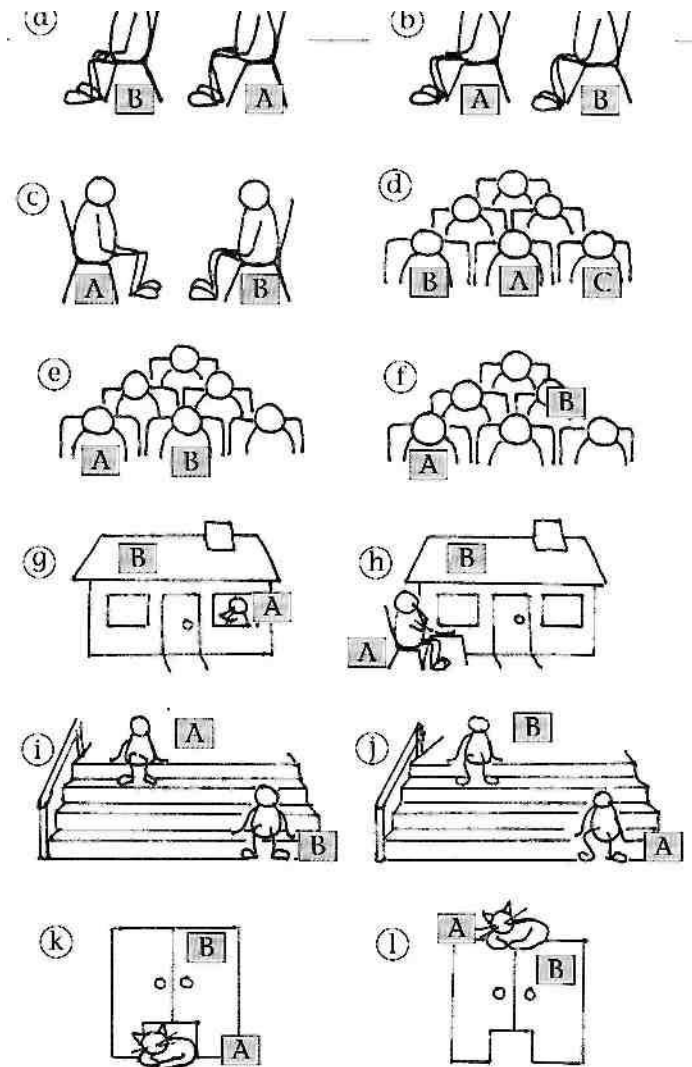
Thanks, Laura

Exercise 12. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form with or without a reflexive pronoun:

James: You don't look well this morning Julie.

Julie: I know. When 1) ...saw myself... (see) in the mirror this morning, I got a shock.
 James: How 2) _____ (you/feel)?
 Julie: Pretty bad. I 3) _____ (give) a treat last night and went to a restaurant for a meal.
 James: And 4) _____ (you/enjoy) it?
 Julie: At the time, yes. But now I'm 5) _____ (ask) if the food was really fresh.

Exercise 13. Look at the pictures and choose the correct preposition or phrase to complete sentences a) - l) below.



behind	between	under
in front of	below	near
on top of	opposite	above
next to	inside	outside

- a) A is behind B.
 b) A is _____ B.

- c) A is _____ B.
- d) A is _____ B and C
- e) A is _____ B.
- f) A is _____ B.
- g) A is _____ B.
- h) A is _____ B.
- i) A is _____ B.
- j) A is _____ B.
- k) A is _____ B.
- l) A is _____ B.

Exercise 14. Fill in the definite or indefinite article if necessary:

1. _____ Russia occupies _____ eastern half of _____ Europe and _____ northern third _____ of Asia. 2. _____ climate of _____ northern part of _____ Russia is severe. 3. In _____ European part of _____ Russia _____ summer is warm and sunny. 4. This winter is _____ true Russian winter with hard frosts. 5. It is warm all _____ year round in _____ Crimea and _____ Caucasus. 6. _____ Commonwealth of Independent States is one of _____ biggest countries of _____ whole world. 7. Tbilisi is _____ capital of _____ Georgia. 8. I want to go to _____ Alma-Ata some day. 9. _____ best way to know and understand _____ people of other countries is to meet them in their own homes. 10. Is Australia _____ island or _____ continent? 11. _____ Black Sea is in _____ South. 12. There are six continents in _____ world, aren't there? 13. France is to _____ northwest of Italy.

Exercise 15. Fill in prepositions if necessary:

1. He must go to St. Petersburg _____ spring. 2. We take our written exams _____ January. 3. Our studies begin _____ autumn. 4. What do you do _____ Sunday? 5. All the students of our group will take part in the concert _____ the eighth _____ May. 6. May I ring you up _____ the morning? 7. My elder brother is a doctor. He often comes _____ home late _____ night. 8. Is there anybody _____ the Dean's office? 9. I must go and see him _____ three o'clock _____ Friday. 10. Listen _____ the new text _____ the laboratory. 11. Look _____ the blackboard. Do you see any mistakes _____ it? 12. Who is _____ duty today? 13. Will you go _____ the blackboard? 14. You may go _____ your place. 15. _____ the right _____ the dining-table there is a cupboard.

Exercise 16. Fill in the definite or indefinite article if necessary:

1. There are three rooms and _____ kitchen in her new flat. 2. My new dress is made of _____ silk. 3. If you want to write something on _____ blackboard, you must have _____ piece of _____ chalk. 4. Are there any students in _____ Room No 12? 5. I have _____ new English book. _____ book is very interesting. 6. There is _____ garden and _____ lawn in front of her Institute. _____ garden is not large, but it is very beautiful. 7. The students of your group must be in _____ Room No.

30. 8. Open _____ book at page 29 and start reading. 9. May is _____ fifth month of the year. 10. Saturday is _____ seventh day of the week. 11. Sunday is _____ day off.

Exercise 17. Fill in the definite or indefinite article if necessary:

In 1) the days before 2) _____ invention of 3) _____ radio or television, 4) _____ majority of people made their own entertainment at home. Many 5) _____ evenings were spent reading 6) _____ novel, playing the piano or painting 7) _____ picture. In many ways, people were almost forced to find 8) _____ creative outlet in one form or another. Things have changed a lot since then, however. Now, 9) _____ typical evening's entertainment would be to spend 10) _____ few hours in front of 11) _____ television. This is not really 12) _____ very productive use of one's time or energy and has maybe contributed to 13) _____ breakdown of communication within 14) _____ family.

Exercise 18. Fill in "the" where necessary:

My father owns a shop in 1) the village where we live. His shop is 2) _____ only newsagent's in our village. It's next to 3) _____ post office and 4) _____ station, and only two minutes walk from 5) _____ home. 6) _____ shop has been in our family for two generations. When my grandfather owned it, I was only very young. I used to help him on 7) _____ Sunday afternoons by weighing 8) _____ sweets and putting them in 9) _____ bags. Sometimes he would even let me use 10) _____ ice-cream machine, which I loved. My mother used to get angry with him though, because he would leave me alone to look after 11) _____ shop while he went to talk to 12) _____ friends at 13) _____ pub. One afternoon I was in 14) _____ shop tidying 15) _____ newspapers when a man came in. 16) _____ man was very tall and looked very serious. He asked me if my grandfather was around. I said he was in 17) _____ back room and went to get him. When my grandfather came out, he saw 18) _____ man and suddenly started to cry. 19) _____ two men hugged and talked in 20) _____ quiet voices. Eventually they remembered me in 21) _____ corner of 22) _____ shop. My grandfather turned to me and introduced 23) _____ man to me. He was my grandfather's brother who had moved to 24) _____ Australia after 25) _____ war and they hadn't seen each other for 20 years.

Exercise 19. Fill in: a, an or the where necessary:

1. The Tower of London is a popular tourist attraction.
2. Newcastle is _____ town in _____ north of _____ England.
3. Princess lives in _____ palace in _____ London.
4. Buckingham Palace is where _____ Queen of England officially lives.
5. She bought _____ expensive necklace at _____ Harrods.
6. They went for _____ stroll around _____ St James' Park.

7. The supermarket is in _____ Kendell Street opposite _____ Lloyds Bank.
8. _____ hotel where they held their wedding reception was called _____ Grand Hotel.
9. Anna was born in _____ Italy but she lives in _____ USA now.
10. The convict is in _____ prison on _____ outskirts of town.
11. His favourite newspaper is _____ Guardian.
12. Gatwick Airport is in _____ southern England.
13. Duchess of York opened _____ new hospital in _____ centre of London.
14. He went on _____ expensive holiday to _____ Bahamas.
15. Statue of Liberty is in _____ New York.
16. National Park was opened _____ last week by _____ mayor.
17. expedition to _____ South Pole needs a lot of careful planning.
18. Odeon cinema is in _____ Appleton Street just past _____ library.
19. Last month I saw _____ film and then went to _____ concert _____ film was brilliant but _____ concert was boring
20. There are three cars parked outside: _____ Mercedes, _____ Jaguar and _____ Fiat. Mine is _____ Fiat.
21. _____ Harrods is a huge department store near _____ Kensington Gardens.
22. Sam lives in _____ little flat in _____ middle of the city. There is _____ pub nearby and _____ noise keeps him awake at night.
23. _____ Hilton Hotel is situated near _____ River Thames.
24. I applied for job last week _____ job involved driving _____ van around the country.
25. Tate Gallery is quite far from _____ Science Museum, so you'd better take a bus.
26. Sales Manager has cold, so he can't come to _____ meeting this afternoon.
27. I have _____ appointment at _____ dentist's this afternoon because I've got _____ toothache.
28. We spent _____ last summer on _____ island of Crete.

Exercise 20. Fill in "the" where necessary:

1) _____ Last year we went on holiday to Spain where my father was born. We had never been before as a family so I couldn't wait. We travelled by 2) _____ plane and when we got to 3) _____ airport in 4) _____ Madrid I was very excited. We saw many interesting sights and we visited 5) _____ Prado Museum and 6) _____ Escorial Palace where 7) _____ King of Spain lives. We also watched a bullfight. It was thrilling. We stayed in Spain all 8) _____ summer and we toured some of 9) _____ Spanish islands, too. I liked 10) _____ Spaniards but I found 11) _____ Spanish language rather difficult to understand. 12) _____ people there spoke very quickly and, although I had taken 13) _____ Spanish lessons at school, I was by no means fluent. We also met members of 14) _____ family whom we

had never been before and we went out with them a lot. My cousins took us to 15) _____ cinema one night but 16) _____ film was in 17) _____ Spanish so we didn't understand very much! All in all, we had a good holiday and we have invited our cousins to come and stay at our house 18) _____ next year.

Exercise 21. Fill in "the" where necessary:

Dear Sally,

I've been in England for a month now and I'm really enjoying it. 1) The English family I'm staying with are very kind, but they are very different from my family. Mr. Taylor stays at 2) _____ home every day doing 3) _____ cooking and cleaning and looking after 4) _____ children. Jane goes to 5) _____ school but Johnny is only two and he doesn't even go to 6) _____ nursery school yet. Mrs Taylor is a writer. At the moment, she is writing a book about 7) _____ World War II. She is doing research and she goes to 8) _____ library every day to get 9) _____ information. When she is at 10) _____ home, she locks herself in 11) _____ study and won't let anyone disturb her. She has been working on 12) _____ book for over two years and she hopes that it will be ready in 13) _____ spring. On Sundays they all go to 14) _____ church and in 15) _____ afternoon they visit 16) _____ children's grandparents. 17) _____ rest of 18) _____ week is spent indoors either watching 19) _____ television or reading one of 20) _____ many books that they have collected over the years. They have really made me feel welcome. Write back to me soon with all your news.

Regards, Julie

22. Memory Work:

Roadways

By John Masefield

One road leads to London,
One road runs to Wales,
My road leads me seawards
To the white dipping sails.

One road leads to the river
As it goes singing slow.
My road leads to shipping
Where the bronzed sailors go.

My road calls me, lures me
West, east, south and north,
Most roads lead men homewards
My road leads me forth.

Lesson 8

1. Grammar. The Future Continuous Tense. Відсутність артиклів *a/an, the*.

The Future Continuous Tense

I	shall (shan't)	be meeting the delegation at the station. be having dinner at 5 o'clock. be sleeping when mother comes.
We		
He (She)	will (won't)	
You		
They		
Shall	I we	
Will	he (she) you they	

Відсутність артиклів *a/an, the*

Випадки відсутності артиклів <i>a/ an, the</i>	Приклади та їх переклад українською мовою	
1. Перед іменником у множині, якщо в однині перед ним мав би стояти неозначений артикль	There are books on the table.	На столі знаходяться книжки.
2. Якщо перед іменником стоїть займенник	his book this street	його книга ця вулиця
3. Якщо перед іменником стоїть інший іменник у присвійному відмінку	Mrs. Brown's house is not far from mine.	Будинок місіс Браун знаходиться недалеко від мого будинку.
4. Перед іменником-звертанням	Come on, girls!	Швидше, дівчата!
5. Перед іменником, після якого стоїть кількісний числівник	Lesson 10 Room 101	Урок десятий. Кімната сто перша.
6. Перед назвами днів тижня, місяців, пір року	I'll see you on Wednesday.	Я провідаю тебе у середу.
7. Перед назвами свят	We have a holiday at Easter and New Year.	У нас вихідні на Великдень і Новий рік.

8. Перед назвами ігор та інших видів спорту	I like basketball and football and my sister is fond of gymnastics.	Мені подобається баскетбол і футбол, а моя сестра захоплюється
9. Перед назвами, що означають їжу чи приймання їжі (<i>breakfast, lunch, dinner, supper</i>)	Is breakfast ready? We try to have dinner together.	Сніданок готовий? Ми намагаємося обідати разом.
10. Перед назвами шкільних предметів	History is the most interesting subject for me.	Історія для мене найцікавіший предмет.
11. Перед назвами мов, що вживаються самостійно без іменника <i>language</i>	He is very good at English.	Він дуже добре знає англійську мову.
12. Перед назвами кольорів у значенні іменників	I love red.	Мені подобається червоний.
13. Перед іменниками <i>mother, father</i> , коли вони згадуються членами тієї ж родини	I've got mother and father.	У мене є батько й мати.
14. Перед іменниками, що означають звання (вчені, військові) і передують власному імені	Professor Brown is a very interesting person.	Професор Браун – дуже цікава людина.
15. Перед географічними назвами: а) континентів б) країн, штатів і провінцій в) міст та інших населених пунктів (винятком є назва міста <i>Гаага the Hague</i>) г) гірських вершин та одиночних гір д) окремих островів е) озер є) водоспадів	Africa, Asia, Europe, France, Japan London, New York, Kyiv Hoverla is the highest mount in the Carpathians. Ukrainian children who suffered from Chornobyl disaster are cured on Cuba. Baikal is the deepest lake. Victoria falls in Africa are more than a mile wide.	Африка, Азія, Європа Франція, Японія Лондон, Нью-Йорк, Київ Говерла – найвища гора у Карпатах. Українські діти, які постраждали від Чорнобильської катастрофи лікуються на Кубі. Байкал – найглибше озеро. Водоспад Вікторія в Африці має ширину більше милі.

16. Перед назвами планет: <i>Mars, Venus, Saturn</i> та інші	Venus is nearer to the sun than Mars.	Венера знаходиться ближче до сонця, ніж Марс.
17. Перед назвами доріг, вулиць, авеню, площ, парків	Khreschatyk is the main street in Kyiv.	Хрещатик – головна вулиця Києва.
18. Перед назвами аеропортів, університетів, якщо ця назва складається з двох слів, першим з яких є власне ім'я особи або міста/місця	Shevchenko University is in Kyiv.	Університет імені Шевченка знаходиться у Києві.
19. Перед назвами магазинів, ресторанів, готелів, банків, якщо цими назвами є власні імена їх засновників	McDonald's are very popular all over the world.	Ресторани "Мак-Дональдс" дуже популярні у всьому світі.
20. Перед назвами журналів	I like to read Cosmopolitan.	Мені подобається читати "Космополітен".
21. Перед іменниками, що означають абстрактні поняття і не мають обмежувального означення	My work gives me satisfaction.	Моя робота дає мені задоволення.
22. Перед такими іменниками, як <i>advice, information, money, hair, fruit</i> при відсутності обмежувального означення	Money is good but luck is better, I think.	Я вважаю, що гроші – це добре, але щастя краще.
23. Перед назвами речовин у загальному значенні	Honey is wholesome.	Мед – корисний для здоров'я.

2. Read and translate the text:

OUR UNIVERSITY

Dear Helen.

Don't be angry with me for my long silence, but really I was too busy to write.

As you know, I left school in June and began to prepare for my entrance exams to the University. As both my mother and father are teachers I have made up my mind to be a teacher too. I think teaching is a noble profession.

I had to take four exams and passed all of them with excellent marks. So I'm

glad to tell you that now I'm a first-year student at the Kyiv State Teacher Training University.

I should like to show you the main building of our University. I can't help admiring this fine old building with its beautiful columns. The first students entered it more than 80 years ago.

It goes without saying we, students, are very proud of this fact.

There are 18 faculties at our University which train teachers in many subjects: Ukrainian, Literature, Mathematics, Physics, Geography, Chemistry, Biology, Foreign languages and others. Many well-known professors teach at our University.

We have good libraries and reading-rooms and for those who go in for sports there are good gymnasiums and a stadium. .

At present we have quite a lot of work as we have English practice, Grammar and Phonetics, Linguistics, History of our native land and other subjects. There is an English speaking club at our faculty. It gives us a good opportunity to master the language, but I don't take part in it yet. I'm working hard at my pronunciation. There is a good language laboratory at our faculty where we work with CD-players. It helps us to find out our mistakes and to get rid of them in the shortest possible time.

So that's the latest news about myself. Please write .to me about your life and studies.

My best regards to your parents.

Yours, Ann.

3. Word List on the Subject "Our University":

further (higher) education – *вища освіта*

Medical University – *медичний університет*

the humanities – *гуманітарні науки*

the technical sciences – *технічні науки*

department – *кафедра, відділення*

first-year student / freshman (Am.) – *студент 1-го курсу*

third-year student / junior (Am.) – *студент 3-го курсу*

the natural sciences – *природничі науки*

Pedagogical University – *педагогічний університет*

University – *університет*

correspondence department – *заочне відділення*

year – *курс (рік навчання)*

second-year student / sophomore (Am.) – *студент 2-го курсу*

fourth-year student / senior (Am.) – *студент 4-го курсу*

full time department – денне відділення	part-time department – вечірнє відділення
faculty – факультет	philology – філологія
philosophy – філософія	ecology – екологія
economics – економіка	research – дослідження
scientific supervisor (advisor) – науковий керівник	candidate of sciences – кандидат наук
scientist – учений	doctor – доктор наук
higher degree – науковий ступінь	thesis – дисертація
head of department – завідувач кафедри	sessional examinations (sessionals) – екзаменаційна сесія
essay project – курсова робота	test-credit – залік
graduation project – дипломна робота	to enter the University – поступати до університету
rector – ректор	vice-rector – проректор
dean – декан	term, semester – семестр
professor – професор	tuition – навчання
junior lecturer (assistant lecturer) – асистент	University graduate – випускник університету
tutor – викладач, наставник	student – студент
course member – слухач курсів	senior lecturer – старший викладач
to graduate from the University – закінчити університет	entrance examination (exam) – вступний іспит
tuition fee – плата за навчання	scholarship, grants – стипендія
vacation – студентські канікули, вакації	on vacation – на канікулах, на вакаціях
reader (principal lecturer) – доцент	final examination – випускний іспит
to sit for an exam / to take an exam – скласти іспит	to give (set) an exam – приймати іспит
re-examination – перескладання іспиту	to fail in an exam – не скласти іспит, «завалитися»
to pass an examination with distinction – скласти іспит з відзнакою	universal secondary compulsory education – загальна обов'язкова середня освіта
ordinary leave examinations – випускні іспити на звичайному рівні	end-of-exam – іспит наприкінці семестру
to pass an exam – скласти іспит	selective examinations – відбірні іспити
to go through one's exam / to do well at an exam – успішно скласти іспит	full-time education – освіта з відривом від виробництва

Exercise 4. Fill in prepositions or adverbs if necessary:

1. First-year students work hard to master _____ the language. 2. What mark did you get _____ Literature _____ the entrance exams? 3. What mark have you got _____ your report? 4. "Try to get rid _____ this gross mistake,"

said the teacher. 5. When did you make a report _____ this book? 6. Our nephew is very good _____ maths. 7. Why don't you take part _____ our discussion? 8. We decided to join _____ the English choir. 9. Where have you been? We haven't seen you _____ ages. 10. When the monitor entered _____ the classroom the students kept silent. 11. Cousin Helen sends her best regards _____ everybody. 12. The girl has invited her friends _____ her birthday party. 13. What kind of sports does he go _____? – He is good _____ tennis and volley-ball. 14. I see you are angry _____ me, but I don't understand why you do not answer _____ my question. 15. Did he often write _____ his mother when he was _____ the South? 16. The students are proud _____ their Institute. 17. They are all very fond _____ the English speaking club. 18. Two of my fellow-students are away _____ the lessons today.

Exercise 5. Change each of these sentences using the Future Continuous:

1. At 10 o'clock he was still working at the laboratory. 2. My friend was preparing for her written test when I came. 3. Were you waiting for me at the station at 8 o'clock in the morning? 4. Was his friend giving a lesson at 5 o'clock? 5. My nephew was repairing our vacuum-cleaner at 7. 6. My uncle was listening to the news when I went to bed. 7. My aunt was knitting the whole morning.

Exercise 6. Use the Future Continuous where possible:

1. Will you have a cup of tea? – No, thank you. I (to have) lunch soon. 2. I hope I (to sleep) peacefully tonight. 3. My boys (to go) back to college in a week's time, and I (to be) alone again. 4. What tasty little cakes! I expect you (to make) some more cakes like these while I stay with you, Auntie! 5. I must be off now, They (to wonder) what has happened to me. 6. I'm sure they (to meet) us at the station. I (to be) so glad to see them! 7. Will you, please, wait a little? He (to come) home soon. 8. I don't want to disturb you. I know you (to pack). 9. It's just the time to see him. He (to work) in his little garden. 10. He is supposed to be very busy then. He (to prepare) for his examination. 11. Just a second. You (to see) Cora shortly? 12. What game he (to play) tomorrow? 13. I suppose you (to meet) your people? 14. You (to see) him tomorrow by any chance?

Exercise 7. Replace the Future Indefinite by to be going to.

1. I'll travel by car this summer. 2. We'll have a test on the use of tenses on Monday. 3. The Parkers will have a picnic lunch in the country on Sunday. 4. Ann will practice the piano all the morning. 5. There will be a storm soon, look at those clouds. 6. They say she'll be married this autumn. 7. I got wet through in yesterday's rain, I think I shall have a cold. 8. She'll clean the flat on Saturday. 9. What will you do when you finish school? 10. We'll see them all in September when they come from the country. 11. Do you like the song? I'll sing it again this evening. 12. What will you do after classes today? 13. I'll take my last exam next Monday. 14. The article isn't very long; he will translate it tonight. 15. My friend is leaving tomorrow. She says she'll write to me every week.

Exercise 8. Use the proper article:

1. ____ Elbrus is ____ highest peak of ____ Caucasus. 2. ____ Japan is situated on ____ islands. 3. ____ London is on ____ Thames. 4. ____ Poland is to ____ west of ____ Russia. 5. ____ USA is in ____ North America. 6. In ____ north of our country ____ summer is very short. 7. What is ____ capital of ____ Spain? 8. This expedition has just returned from ____ Antarctic. 9. ____ Urals separate Europe from ____ Asia. 10. ____ Ireland is ____ island, isn't it? 11. ____ Mississippi is ____ longest river in ____ world. 12. ____ names of ____ rivers, seas and oceans are used with ____ definite article. 13. Turning to ____ East he saw that ____ sun had risen. 14. I hear he is off to ____ Central Africa. 15. ____ Severn is ____ longest river in ____ Great Britain. 16. ____ Great Britain lies in ____ eastern part of ____ Atlantic Ocean.

Exercise 9. Use the proper article:

1. What shall we have for ____ dessert today? 2. Let's go to ____ canteen and have ____ bite. 3. ____ cucumbers and ____ tomatoes are ____ vegetables. 4. I don't like ____ mineral water, I prefer ____ cup of ____ tea. 5. Pass me ____ butter, please. 6. ____ water, ____ milk, tea and ____ coffee are drinks. 7. Is there anything to your taste on ____ menu? 8. Will you bring ____ knife from ____ kitchen? 9. Only after ____ second course he felt he was not hungry any longer. 10. Is ____ pudding to your taste? 11. They sat down to ____ table and began eating. 12. It was ____ stewed-fruit and ____ ice-cream to follow ____ ice-cream was rather melted.

Exercise 10. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the use of the article with the names of meals:

1. We have ____ breakfast at 8. 2. When ____ lunch was over they went upstairs to rest a little. 3. We all agreed that it. was ____ very pleasant dinner. 4. It is not good to smoke before ____ breakfast. 5. Nobody objected to ____ light supper. 6. At ____ dinner we sat far from each other and could not talk. 7. All that made ____ excellent breakfast. 8. When I came down to ____ tea all had already gone. 9. ____ dinner was marvelous. 10. She was not sure whether she should order ____ supper herself. 11. It all happened at ____ official luncheon. 12. When ____ dinner was over she decided to talk with him. 13. As for ____ supper itself it was ____ very tasty one. 14. For ____ breakfast was bacon and eggs and coffee. 15. We must organize ____ little dinner to celebrate the event. 16. If you come half an hour before ____ supper you will always find him at home. 17. After ____ dinner sit a while, after ____ supper walk a mile. 18. That night we had ____ lonely little dinner. 19. She came down to ____ breakfast. 20. I shall speak to him at ____ dinner.

Exercise 11. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles:

ручка дверей, ніжка стола, дах будинку, стеля кімнати, обкладинка книги, спинка крісла, крило літака; пачка сигарет, група студентів, букетик фіалок, стадо овець, набір інструментів; буханка хліба, ложка варення, кусок цукру,

чашка кафи, пляшка вина.

Exercise 12. Use the proper article:

1. Did you finish ____ school ____ last year? 2. ____ examiner has already come. 3. What was your mark in ____ History? 4. He has made ____ great progress since ____ beginning of ____ term. 5. It is easy for ____ child to study ____ foreign language. 6. Where is ____ money? — It is on ____ table. 7. ____ boy is good at ____ Mathematics, ____ Physics and ____ Chemistry, but his knowledge of ____ Literature and ____ English is rather poor. 8. What ____ fine weather we are having today! 9. At last he found ____ very interesting work. 10. ____ news he brought yesterday is very important. 11. What ____ clever advice! 12. ____ Phonetics is ____ branch of ____ Linguistics. 13. If you want to speak without ____ mistakes you must study ____ Grammar hard. 14. What is ____ news? 15. ____ exercise 12 must be done in ____ written form. 16. Do you often work in ____ laboratory? 17. She attends ____ course of ____ lectures on ____ Russian Literature at ____ University. 18. I am not interested in ____ Chemistry. 19. Her subject is ____ History of ____ Art. 20. It was clear she had ____ good news. 21. ____ advice is good but I cannot follow it.

Exercise 13. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the Bath-phrases (attributive and adverbial):

1. ____ driver was ____ young fellow with ____ large red hands, ____ long legs and ____ orange hair. 2. They watched them go with ____ amused look. 3. She always met me with ____ smile. 4. He sat down to table with ____ great pleasure. 5. They have been working with ____ enthusiasm all this time. 6. It was ____ little house with ____ green windows and ____ brown door. 7. It was ____ cold winter with ____ sunny weather and ____ severe frosts. 8. The child looked at us with ____ surprise. 9. He was ____ young man with ____ pleasant open smile. 10. He spoke with ____ bitterness.

Exercise 14. Use the proper article:

Mor knew that now was his chance to give Miss Carter ____ letter. He stood up. Miss Carter looked at him, ____ little surprised. Mor searched his pockets for ____ letter, which took him ____ moment or two. Then he held it forth and threw it quickly on to her knee. It fell to ____ floor and she picked it up with ____ puzzled look. As she did this, ____ motion caught ____ Mor's eye and he looked over ____ Miss Carter's head to see that Demoyte was standing at ____ open door and had seen ____ scene. Miss Carter, who had her back to ____ door, had not observed him. She put ____ letter quickly into ____ handbag, which lay beside her, and looked up again at Mor.

Exercise 15. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the of-phrases:

a) 1. He leaned on ____ back of ____ chair. 2. He saw the boy on ____ roof of ____ house. 3. ____ neck of ____ bottle was very narrow. 4. It was ____ face of ____ old man. 5. ____ cover of ____ book was very bright. 6. He gave her ____

little bunch of ____ flowers. 7. I am looking for ____ box of ____ matches. 8. She joined ____ group of ____ students standing near by. 9. ____ whole pack of ____ cigarettes got wet and he couldn't smoke. 10. The house was reached by ____ flight of ____ steps.

b) 1. She asked for ____ glass of ____ water. 2. We could see ____ drops of ____ dew on the grass. 3. What do you say to ____ bottle of ____ beer? - No beer, thanks, I prefer ____ glass of ____ mineral water or just ____ cup of ____ tea. 4. He took ____ jug of ____ milk standing on the kitchen-table and poured himself a little. 5. Here's ____ piece of ____ chalk for you to write with.

Exercise 16. Use the proper article:

1. ____ building Lammiter saw now was ____ garage (once it had been ____ stable and ____ coach-house). 2. ____ curiosity is ____ vivid emotion. 3. He looked like ____ man with several problems on his mind. 4. She went to ____ window for ____ air ____ pain about her heart was dreadful. 5. It was not ____ answer he had expected. 6. He asked her if she could get him ____ clothes in which he could pass unnoticed. 7. ____ young man in ____ photograph seemed familiar to me. 8. She stared at him with ____ strange look that he could not interpret. 9. On ____ evening of St. Valentine's day Boldwood sat down to ____ supper as usual, 10. Suddenly round ____ corner of ____ house ____ group of ____ men appeared. 11. " ____ boy is all right," he said in ____ low voice. 12. ____ new information about them? Do you really have ____ new information? 13. When we returned to ____ town it was already ____ late autumn. 14. Oh, darling, it's ____ Behrman's masterpiece - he painted it there ____ night when ____ last leaf fell. 15. My brother has ____ little cottage ____ mile or so from here, and I have been spending ____ couple of ____ days with him.

17. Speak on the following topics.

Possibilities of receiving a profession after graduating from the University.

Pros and cons of studying at the University

Vasyl Stefanyk Precarpathian National University

18. Speak out the tongue-twister.

Betty Botter bought some butter,
But she said: " This butter's bitter.
If I put it in my batter,
It will make my butter bitter.
But a bit of better butter,
Will make my batter better."
So she bought some better butter,
And it made her batter better,
Such a nice girl this Betty Botter.

Lesson 9

1. Grammar. The Modal Verbs. The Present Perfect Tense.

Modal verbs

Модальне дієслово (MV)	Значення	MV + Simple Infinitive відносить дію до теперішнього або майбутнього	MV + Continuous Infinitive відносить дію до теперішнього	MV + Perfect Infinitive відносить дію до минулого
Can	Фізична або розумова здатність виконати дію Можливість або неможливість виконання дії Прохання, дозвіл Пропозиція, запрошення Неймовірність дії, припущення, сумнів, здивування, невпевненість	I can drive a car. I can translate this text. I can go to the theatre because I am not busy. Can I take your bike? You can take my bike. Can I get you a cup of coffee? He can't tell lies. Winter can be very cold this year. Can he really be ill?	– – – –	– – – –
Could	Ввічливе прохання Припущення, сумнів, здивування	Could I have a cup of tea? He could be in the garden. Could it be true? What could he mean?	– – – –	– – – –

Can має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Заперечна форма від *can*: *can not/can't*; після *can* не вживається частка *to* перед інфінітивом повнозначного дієслова

а) У значенні фізичної або розумової здатності, можливості або неможливості виконати дію *could* у сполученні з Simple Infinitive відносить дію до минулого часу.

б) Після *could* інфінітив повнозначного дієслова вживається без частки *to*.

Have to (have got to)	Необхідність, обов'язок залежно від обставин	I have to help her. He has to be at school in time.	—	—
<i>Have</i> вживається у всіх часах групи Simple і в Present Perfect. Після <i>have</i> завжди вживається частка <i>to</i> перед інфінітивом повнозначного дієслова.				
Be able to	Фізична або розумова здатність, можливість виконати дію	I am able to read, because I learned to read when I was six. He is able to drive a car, because his father has taught him to drive it.	—	—
<i>Be able</i> вживається у всіх часах групи Simple, а також у Present і Past Perfect. Після <i>be able</i> завжди вживається частка <i>to</i> перед інфінітивом повнозначного дієслова.				
May	Ввічливе прохання, дозвіл, побажання Сумнів, невпевненість, можлива, імовірна дія	May I come in? You may open the window. May you be happy. Who that may be? That may be George.	—	— Nick may be sleeping now. She may be speaking to her teacher now.
<i>May</i> має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Заперечна форма: <i>may not</i> . Після <i>may</i> інфінітив повнозначного дієслова вживається без частки <i>to</i> .				
Be permitted to Be allowed to	Дозвіл робити щось	I am allowed/permitted to watch TV.	—	—
<i>Be allowed/permitted</i> вживаються у всіх часах групи Simple і групи Perfect. Після <i>be allowed/permitted</i> завжди вживається частка <i>to</i> перед інфінітивом повнозначного дієслова.				

Might	Сумнів, невпевненість, можлива, імовірна дія Дорікання Дуже ввічливе прохання	That might be George. You might speak to me more politely. Might I go now, please?	He might be sleeping now.	They might have finished the construction of their house. You might have spoken to me more politely.
-------	---	---	------------------------------	--

Might має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Заперечна форма: *might not/ mightn't*. Після *might* інфінітив дієслова вживається без частки *to*.

Must	Обов'язок, повинність	You must come in time for your classes.	—	—
	Необхідність	Man must eat to live.	—	—
	Переконлива порада, пропозиція, запрошення	You must go and see this film.	—	—
		You must come to my birthday party.	—	—
	Заборона (у заперечній формі)	You mustn't steal other people's things.	—	—
	Здогад, передбачення, припущення з більшим ступенем упевненості, ніж з дієсловами <i>may/might</i>	You must feel bad.	The book isn't on the shelf. Jane must be reading it.	She must have already come home.

Must має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Заперечна форма: *must not/ mustn't*. Після *must* інфінітив повнозначного дієслова вживається без частки *to*.

Had better	Порада, пропозиція, надання переваги чомусь	He had better sell his car. I had better stay here.	—	—
---------------	--	--	---	---

Had better має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Після *had better* не вживається частка *to* перед інфінітивом повнозначного дієслова.

The Present Perfect Tense

He (She) Mary John Father	has left ('s left) has not left (hasn't left)	for the Institute for the country for England	
I We You They Betty and Tom	have left ('ve left) have not left (haven't left)	for Moscow.	
Has	he (she) Mary John father	(not) left	for the Institute? for the country? for England?
Have	I we you they Betty and Tom		for Moscow?
He (She) Mary John Father	has already had ('s already had)	breakfast. lunch. dinner, supper. tea. an English lesson.	
I We You They Betty and Tom	have already had ('ye already had)		
He (She) Mary John Father	has not had (hasn't had)	breakfast lunch dinner supper tea an English lesson	yet.
I We You They Betty and Tom	have not had		

2. Read and translate the text:

MEALS

The hospitality of Ukrainian people is well-known throughout the world. When a **foreigner sets foot in** Ukraine first he gets acquainted **with** our cookery – national dishes and meal-times. Frequently he gets to know that in this country they are not the same as in his. But he has to do in Ukraine as the Ukrainians do. The usual meals in Ukraine are breakfast, lunch, dinner and supper. Sanatoriums,

rest-homes, hospitals and other public **establishments** generally follow the former order of meals. But a number of Ukrainian families follow the latter order. Breakfast is the first meal of the day. Lunch or luncheon is a light meal usually in the middle of the day. Dinner is the chief and the most **substantial** meal. It isn't served at a definite hour in our country. When it is in the middle of the day, the lighter evening meal is called supper. Working people usually have a break for dinner at their place of **employment**. During the break they have either dinner or lunch.

In great many Ukrainian homes dinner is followed by a cup of tea with a slice of lemon, jam or home-made pastry.

If you have a special dinner, a housewarming party for example, you should know how **to lay the table** on such an occasion.

First you spread the table-cloth and put out table-mats **to protect** the table from the hot dishes: a **tureen** of soup, a bowl of hot vegetables, a platter of meat, a boat of sauce, etc. Then you take out of the drawer in the sideboard soup spoons for the soup, spoons for the sweet and all the **cutlery** – knives and forks, including a small knife for the butter, a small knife and fork for the hors d'oeuvres and a fruit knife for **the dessert**.

You should put the knives and the soup spoon on the right-hand side and the fork on the left, except the spoon for the sweet which you should put across the top. Then you put out the bread-board and a knife to cut the bread.

On the left of each guest you put a small plate for bread and on the right a wine-glass. Don't forget to put out the table **napkins** for each guest and place several **salt-cellars**.

Once again have a look at the table and see if it is laid for each person. Then you are ready for the friends to come and don't forget to put a bowl of beautiful flowers on the dinner table.

I remember my last receiving the guests. It was my birthday party. I had thought over the **menu** of that dinner-party before the guests came to my place. I began with hors d'oeuvres followed by a **clear soup** with meat **pasties**, **the second course** included chicken with rice and vegetables, salad and so on. Then ice-cream for the sweet and fruit for dessert. And, of course, there was a nice cake with the **candles** lighted. What a lovely birthday party I have had!

3. Word List on the Subject "Meals":

hospitality – <i>гостинність, привітність</i>	national dishes – <i>національні страви</i>
substantial – <i>істотний, важливий, значний</i>	to get acquainted with – <i>знайомитися з</i>
cookery – <i>кулінарія</i>	foreigner – <i>іноземець</i>
establishment – <i>заклад</i>	to set foot in – <i>ступати</i>
employment – <i>робота, служба, заняття</i>	home-made pastry – <i>домашня випічка, тістечка</i>
to lay the table – <i>накривати на стіл</i>	occasion – <i>випадок, подія</i>
to spread – <i>розстилати</i>	to protect – <i>захищати</i>
tureen – <i>супник, супниця</i>	platter – <i>дерев'яна тарілка</i>
sauce – <i>соус, приправа, присмака</i>	cutlery – <i>ножові вироби</i>
hors d oeuvre – <i>закуска</i>	vegetable stall – <i>ларьок з овочами</i>
napkin – <i>серветка</i>	salt-cellar – <i>сільниця</i>
receiving the guests – <i>прийом гостей</i>	to do one's cooking – <i>готувати (їжу)</i>
clear soup – <i>бульйон</i>	pasty, pie – <i>пиріг</i>
the second course – <i>друга страна</i>	candle – <i>свічка</i>
to buy meat at the butcher's – <i>купувати м'ясо в м'ясному магазині</i>	to buy sugar at the grocer's – <i>купувати цукор у бакалейному магазині</i>
to buy bread at the baker's – <i>купувати хліб у хлібному магазині</i>	to buy fish at the fishmonger's – <i>купувати рибу в рибному магазині</i>
to buy sweets at the confectionery – <i>купувати цукерки (солодоці) в кондитерському магазині</i>	to buy fruit and vegetables at the greengrocer's – <i>купувати фрукти й овочі в овочевому магазині</i>
to buy food in the market – <i>купувати продукти на ринку</i>	to haggle over the price of meat, fish, etc. (in the market) – <i>торгуватися на ринку</i>
for dessert – <i>десерт, солодка страва</i>	menu – <i>меню</i>

At the Baker's

bread (white, brown, rye) – <i>хліб (білий, чорний, житній)</i>	biscuits, cookies (Am.); piecrust – <i>печиво</i>
fresh bread – <i>свіжий хліб</i>	stale bread – <i>черствий хліб</i>
slice of bread – <i>окраєць хліба</i>	roll – <i>булочка, паляничка, сайка</i>
scone – <i>булочка з родзинками</i>	bread-ring – <i>бублик</i>
rusk – <i>сухар (солодкий)</i>	pie – <i>пиріг</i>
pudding – <i>пудинг</i>	baking – <i>випічка, печиво</i>
loaf of bread – <i>буханець хліба</i>	sponge cake – <i>бісквітний торт</i>
cake – <i>торт, тістечко</i>	plumbcake – <i>кекс</i>
pastry – <i>кондитерські вироби</i>	crust of bread – <i>шкоринка хліба</i>

At the Butcher's

meat – м'ясо	beefsteak – біфштекс
ham – шинка	bacon – бекон
pork – свинина	beef – яловичина
veal – телятина	mutton – баранина
rump-steak – ромштекс, шматок вирізки	rasher – тонка скибка бекону або шинки
sirloin – філе (м'ясо без кісток)	duck – качка
sausage – ковбаса	sausage-meat – ковбасний фарш
fat – сало	lard – сало (топлене свиняче)
suet – сало (натуральне яловиче або бараняче)	chop (pork, mutton) – відбивна (свиняча, бараняча)
hot-dog – гаряча сосиска, хотдог	frankfurter – сосиска
cutlet – котлета	rissole meat-ball – котлета рублена
liver – печінка	heart – серце
tongue – язик	tender meat – м'яке (ніжне) м'ясо
tough meat – жорстке м'ясо	fat meat – жирне м'ясо
stew meat, braised meat – тушковане м'ясо	hamburger – гамбургер, булочка з котлетою
lean meat – пісне м'ясо	meat dish – м'ясна страва
poultry turkey – індичка	chicken – курча, курка
broiler – бройлер	minced meat, mince – фарш (м'ясний)
goose – гусак, гуска	

Dairy Products

milk – молоко	cream – вершки
whipped cream – збиті вершки	sour cream – сметана
curds cottage cheese – сир	cheese – сир (твердий)
fresh (new-laid) egg – свіже яєчня	boiled egg – варене яйце
butter – вершкове масло	soft-boiled egg – яйце, зварене рідко
fried eggs – яєчня	scrambled eggs – яєчня
poached egg – яйце пашот (зварене без шкаралупи в окропі)	yoghurt – йогурт (кисле молоко, кисляк)
omelette – омлет	hard-boiled egg – яйце, морене круто
pats of butter – шматки масла	mayonnaise – майонез
margarine – маргарин	

At the Grocer's

cereal – крупа	sugar – цукор
buckwheat – гречка	macaroni – макарони
noodles – локишина	rice – рис
spaghetti – спагетти	millet – просо
flour – мука	oats (Am.) – вівсяна каша
porridge – вівсяна каша з молоком	salt – сіль

bottle of sauce – пляшка соусу
castor sugar – цукрова пудра
loaf sugar – цукор-рафінад
tea – чай
packet of tea – пачка чаю
black coffee – чорна кава
ready-ground coffee – молота кава
instant coffee – розчинна кава
pepper – перець
sunflower oil – соняшникова олія
olive oil – маслинова олія
coffee beans freshly roasted – свіжо-підсмажені зерна кави
mustard – гірчиця

packet of salt – пачка сілі
granulated sugar – цукор-пісок
lump sugar – колотий цукор
coffee – кава
white coffee – кава з молоком
spice – спеції
cocoa – какао
vinegar – оцет
vegetable oil – рослинна олія
Tea is Indian (China, Ceylon, Georgian) – чай індійський (китайський, цейлонський, грузинський)

At the Fishmonger's

fish – риба
shrimps – креветки
perch – окунь
plaice – комбат
cod – тріска
sprats – шпроти
eel – вугор
fish dish – рибна страва
broiled fish – риба, запечена в духовні
marinated fish – маринована риба

herring – оселедець
lobster – омар
pike – щука
trout – форель
salmon – лосось
caviar – ікра
crucian – карна
fried fish – смажена риба
smoked fish – копчена {вуджена} риба
stuffed fish – фарширована риба

At the Greengrocer's

apple – яблуко
apricot – абрикос, марем
pear – груша
plum – слива
peach – персик
cherry – вишня
grapes – виноград
banana – банан
grapefruit – грейпфрут

Fruit

orange – апельсин, помаранча
pineapple – ананас
tangerine – мандарин
lemon – цитрина
pomegranate – гранат
kiwi fruit – ківі
water-melon – кавун
melon – диня

Vegetables

tomatoes – помідори
cucumbers – огірки
carrots – морква

turnip – ріпа
beets – буряк
beans – квасоля

potatoes – картопля
radish – редиска, редька
peas – горох
egg-plant – баклажан
garlic – **часник**
cauliflower – цвітна капуста
onion – цибуля
capsicum – стручковий перець
sauerkraut – кисла капуста

lettuce – салат (рослина)
asparagus – спаржа, холодок
cabbage – капуста
fennel – кріп
spinach – шпинат
vegetable marrow – кабачок
celery – селера
pumpkin – гарбуз
parsley – петрушка

Berries

strawberry – полуниця, суниця
raspberry – малина
gooseberry – агрус
cranberry – журавлина

blackberry – ожина, чорниця
currant – смородина; порічки
blueberry – брусниця

Nuts

walnut – волоський горіх
cashew nut – лісовий горіх

nutmeg – мускатний горіх
almond – мигдаль

Drinks

white wine – біле вино
red wine – червоне вино
vodka – горілка

sparkling wine – ігристе вин
whisky – віскі

Exercise 4. Answer the following questions:

1. What can you say about Ukrainian hospitality?
2. What are your meal-times? What order of meals do you follow?
3. What is the difference between meals and meal-times in England and Ukraine?
4. What is English "afternoon tea"?
5. What is your favourite dish?
6. How would you lay the table for the guests? What about the menu?
7. What do you generally take for the first (second) course?
8. Do national Ukrainian dishes differ from those of English?
9. If we drink a toast to someone's health on a certain occasion, what do we usually say?
10. What is sold at the baker's (grocer's, butcher's, fishmonger's, confectionery)?
11. Are you a great eater?
12. If your hostess asks you whether you would like another cup of tea, what would you reply (a) if you wanted one; (b) if you didn't want one?

Exercise 5. Fill in the missing words:

1. The _____ of the Ukrainian people is well known throughout the world.
2. When a foreigner sets foot in Ukraine first he _____ with our cookery – _____ and meal-times.

3. Dinner is the _____ and the _____ most substantial meal.
4. In great many Ukrainian homes dinner is followed by a cup of tea with a _____, jam and home-made _____.
5. First you spread the _____ and _____ then put out table-mats to protect the table from the hot dishes a of so _____ up, a bowl of hot vegetables, a _____ of meat, a of _____ sauce.
6. You should put the knives and soup spoon on the _____ side and the fork on the _____, except the spoon for the sweet which you should put across the _____.
7. _____ of each guest you put a small plate for bread and on _____ a wineglass.
8. Don't forget to put table _____ for each guest and place several salt-cellars.
9. I began with _____ followed by a clear soup with meat pasties and the second course included _____ chicken with rice and vegetables.
10. Then ice-cream for the _____ and fruit for _____.

Exercise 6. For each sentence place the letter of the best answer in the space provided:

1. The national Ukrainian dishes are:
 - a) beefsteak
 - b) porridge
 - c) borshch
 - d) clear soup
2. The English afternoon "high tea" is:
 - a) the first meal of the day
 - b) the chief and the most substantial meal of the day
 - c) the meal we have during the break
 - d) the meal between five and six o'clock
3. A "continental" breakfast consists of
 - a) porridge or "Corn Flakes" with milk, bacon and eggs, marmalade with buttered toast, and tea or coffee
 - b) rolls and butter and coffee
 - c) a boiled egg, cold ham. or perhaps fish, and a glass of orange juice
 - d) a ham sandwich, fried eggs and mashed potatoes
4. English people generally have lunch at:
 - a) ten o'clock
 - b) eleven o'clock
 - c) one o'clock
 - d) two o'clock
5. When we lay the table we pin the knives and the soup-spoon
 - a) on the left-hand side
 - b) in the middle of the table
 - c) on the right hand side
 - d) across the top

6. When I want to have a bite I go:
- a) to the restaurant 6 _____
- b) to the snack-bar
- c) to the cinema
- d) to the shop
7. We buy cereals at the:
- a) fishmonger's 7 _____
- b) butcher's
- c) grocer's
- d) baker's
8. If you want some more tea you'll say
- a) give me another cup of ten. Please 8 _____
- b) no more, thanks
- c) could you pass me some sugar, please?
- d) enjoy your tea

Exercise 7. Make up a dialogue about the location of the things at a supermarket:

The ESL Supermarket-1

Directions: In each of the spaces marked "X," write one of the following: "fruits," "vegetables," "meats," "dairy," "bakery." Then in any appropriate location, write fifteen of the following. Your partner will ask for their location.

apples	cheese	paper towels
bananas	chicken	pickles
beans	coffee	pineapple
beef	fish	potatoes
breed	grapes	soap
cake	lamb	soup
candy	lettuce	tea
carrots	milk	tomatoes

Exercise 8. Answer the following questions:

1. Have you had dinner yet? 2. Have you had coffee today? 3. Has your brother left for Kiev? 4. Has she ever met my elder brother? 5. Has Mary been to the canteen yet? 6. Have you found anything to your taste on the menu? 7. Have they paid for the lunch yet? 8. What book have you discussed today? 9. How much have you paid for the supper? 10. You have learned this poem by heart, haven't you? 11. You have made few mistakes in spelling, haven't you? 12. Where have you found this book? 13. Which lesson have you learned by heart? 14. What English books have you read yet?

Exercise 9. Rewrite the sentences in the Present Perfect using the adverbs already, just:

Model: *My brother is going to repair the cassette-recorder. My brother has already repaired the cassette-recorder.*

1. I am going to have some practice at the laboratory. 2. I am going to clean the

flat. 3. John is going to shave. 4. They are going to have a rest in the country. 5. Ann is going to turn off the gas. 6. The boy is going to brush his clothes, isn't he? 7. I am going to turn on the light. 8. His family are going to listen to the seven o'clock news, aren't they? 9. Who is going to have a bite?

Exercise 10. Put the adverbs of indefinite time in their proper place:

Models: *He has already finished his coffee. He hasn't finished his coffee yet.*

1. I have seen him (just). 2. Have you spoken to her about it (ever)? 3. I have been to the laboratory (already). Nick isn't there. 4. We have been there before (never). 5. They haven't finished breakfast (yet). 6. I have done my homework (already). 7. Have you made the beds, Ann (already)? 8. Mary and Edward have left (just). 9. She hasn't finished doing the room (yet). 10. I have finished my translation and now I am free (just). 11. She has seen the sea (never) and wants to go to the Crimea this summer. 12. When does your train leave? Have you packed your bags (yet)? 13. Have you been to England (ever)? 14. The bell has gone (just). 15. I have seen him looking so pale (never). 16. If you have seen the film you must remember this scene (ever).

Exercise 11. Use the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. Will you, please, lend me your pen for a moment? I (to leave) mine at home and now (to have) nothing to write with. – I (to be) sorry, but I (to be going) to write myself. Ann (not to write), she can give you her pen. 2. You (to read) "The Gadfly" by Voynich? – I (to read) it now, I (not to finish) it yet. It (to be) a very good book, I (to like) it very much. 3. We (to go) to the cafe "Cosmos" tonight. You ever (to be) there? 4. Where (to be) Ann? – She (to be) in the kitchen. – What she (to do) there? – She (to wash up). – I already (to help) my mother with the house-work and (to come) to ask Ann to go to the cinema with me. 5. Don't forget we (to have) a party tomorrow, be sure to bring Bob with you if he (to come) back from St.Petersburg. 6. (to be) there anything the matter with you? You (to be) so pale. – Nothing the matter. I just (to finish) my work and I (to be) a little tired. 7. Who (to play) the piano? Mary still (to have) her music lesson? – No. The lesson (to be) over and the teacher already (to go). Mother (to play) for little Kitty. 8. Ring me up when you (to be) free. I (to have) something to discuss with you. 9. I (not to hear) the news yet. 10. Hurry up if you (to want) to go out with me. 11. She (to send) me a letter that she (to come) in a few days. 12. You (to understand) what they (to talk) about? 13. When she (to call) on us she always (to bring) some toys for my little daughter. 14. What you (to look) for? – I (to look) for my dictionary. I just (to see) it somewhere. I (to think) it (to be) on the bookshelf.

Exercise 12. Translate into English using the Present Continuous, the Present Indefinite or the Present Perfect:

1. Надінь пальто і шапку. На вулиці холодно, дме сильний вітер. 2. Бачиш людину на розі? Він на нас дивиться. 3. Сьогодні на обід прийде Олена. – Я давно її не бачила. Вона дуже змінилася? – Не дуже. 4. Коли

вчитель пояснює нове правило, він зазвичай пише на дошці приклади. 5. Ти що-небудь чуєш? – Я слухаю уважно, але нічого не чую. 6. Ти читав цю книгу, батьку? – Від корки (cover) до корки. Хороша книга, я збираюся прочитати її ще раз. 7. Хто тільки що вийшов з кімнати? – Не знаю, я нікого не помітив. 8. Дорогою на роботу я зазвичай зустрічаю дітей, які йдуть в школу. 9. Я думаю, вам потрібно випити гарячої кави, перш ніж ви підете. Вечір такий холодний. 10. Ти бачила Мері сьогодні? – Ні, вона хвора. Вона хвора вже десять днів. 11. Що ти збираєшся робити після занять? – Хочу піти в кіно. – Не йди без мене, зачекай, поки я тобі зателефоную. – Добре. 12. Ви ходили в кіно на цьому тижні? – Ні, я дуже зайнята останнім часом. – Ви повинні подивитися новий фільм, він вам, напевно, сподобається. 13. Ви часто ходите в театр? – Так, достатньо часто, і сьогодні йду. 14. Ми давно його не бачили. Неллі говорить, що він дуже змінився. 15. Я дуже рада, що ви прийшли. Ви завжди приносите хороші новини. 16. Сьогодні ми граємо в теніс, Нікі і я. 17. Вони вже виїхали? Ні, вони виїжджають тригодинним поїздом. 18. Є у вас питання? Ви всі зрозуміли, що я вам пояснила? – Спасибі, все зрозуміло.

Exercise 13. Use the Past Indefinite or the Present Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. How long you (to know) him? – I (to, know) him since 1965. 2. He (to live) in Leningrad for two years and then (to go) to Siberia. 3. When he (to arrive)? – He (to arrive) at 2 o'clock. 4. I (to read) this book when I was at school. 5. I can't go with you as I (not to finish) my work. 6. The clock is slow. – It isn't slow, it (to stop). 7. You (to have dinner) yet? 8. The performance (to begin) at 7 o'clock and (to last) for 3 hours. We all (to enjoy) it. 9. The lecture just (to begin). You are a little late. 10. We (to miss) the tram- Now we'll have to walk. 11. You (to be) here before? – Yes, .I.(to spend) my holidays here last year. 12. You (to see) Kitty on Monday? 13. Where is Tom? – I (not to know). I (not to see) him today. 14. I (to lose) my pen. You (to see) it anywhere? 15. You ever (to try) to give up smoking? 16. Why you (to switch on) the light? It is not dark yet. 17. When it (to happen)? 18. He (to leave) for the Far East two years ago and I (not to see) him since. 19. The last post (to come)? 20. When you (to meet) him last? 21. You (to be) 'to the laboratory this week? 22. Why you (to take) my pen while I was out? You (to break) it.

Exercise 14. Answer the questions using may or might.

1. What time does the plane leave? *It might/may leave at 7.00 pm.....*
2. What time did the plane leave?
3. Where's Laura?
4. Where was Laura last week?
5. Where will Laura be next week?
6. What is he doing?
7. What did Sam do yesterday?
8. How much do you think that dress costs?

15. Read, translate and retell the text:

British Meals

The usual meals are breakfast, lunch tea, dinner and supper. Breakfast is generally a bigger meal than you have on the Continent, though some English people like a "continental" breakfast of rolls and butter and coffee. But the usual English breakfast is porridge or "Corn Flakes" with milk or cream and sugar, bacon and eggs, marmalade (made from oranges) with buttered toast, and tea or coffee. For a change you can have a boiled egg, cold ham, or perhaps fish.

We generally have lunch about one o'clock. The businessman in London usually finds it impossible to come home for lunch, and so he goes to a cafe or restaurant; but if I am making lunch at home I have cold meat (left over probably from yesterday's dinner), potatoes, salad and pickles, with a pudding or fruit to follow. Sometimes we have a mutton chop, or steak and chips, followed by biscuits and cheese, and some people like a glass of light beer with lunch. Afternoon tea you can hardly call a meal, but it is a sociable sort of thing, as friends often come in then for a chat while they have their cup of tea, cake or biscuit.

In some houses dinner is the biggest meal of the day. We had rather a special one last night, as we had an important visitor from South America to see Mr. Priestley.

We began with soup, followed by fish, roast chicken, potatoes and vegetables, a sweet, fruit and nuts. Then we went into sitting-room for coffee and cigarettes. But in my house, as in a great many English homes, we make the midday meal the chief one of the day, and in the evening we have the much simpler supper – an omelette, or sausages, sometimes bacon and eggs and sometimes just bread and cheese, a cup of coffee or cocoa and fruit.

But uncle Albert always has "high tea." He says he has no use for these "afternoon teas" where you try to hold a cup of tea in one hand and a piece of bread and butter about as thin as a sheet of paper in the other. He's a Lancashire man, and nearly everyone in Lancashire likes high tea. They have it between five and six o'clock, and they have ham or tongue and tomatoes and salad, or sausages, with good strong tea, plenty of bread and butter, then stewed fruit, or a tin of pears, apricots or pineapple with cream or custard and pastries or a good cake. And that's what they call a good tea.

17. Word List on the Subject "British Meals":

corn flakes – вівсяні пластівці
buttered toast – скибочка хліба,
підрум'янена на вогні на верткому
маслі; грінка; тост
probably – ймовірно
chief – головний

marmalade – мармелад
for a change – для різноманітності
tin (Br.) / **can** (Am.) – банка
консервованих продуктів, бляшанка
steak – біфштекс

Lesson 10

1. Grammar. The Past Perfect Tense. Modal Verbs.

The Past Perfect Tense

We Ann Tom The Browns The students	knew that	we everyone Mr. Black Irene	had	read the letter seen the play bought a radio-set stayed indoors all day
Alice George The Blacks	asked if	John Ann the Browns everyone	had	had dinner bought a lot of fruit changed the clothes

Modal verbs

Модальне дієслово (MV)	Значення	MV + Simple Infinitive відносить дію до теперішнього або майбутнього	MV + Continuous Infinitive відносить дію до теперішнього	MV + Perfect Infinitive відносить дію до минулого
Shall	Пропозиція, прохання, попередження, наказ, обіцянка	Shall we have a party today? Shall I go out? You shall stay just where you are. You shall have my answer tomorrow.	—	—
<i>Shall</i> має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Після <i>shall</i> інфінітив повнозначного дієслова вживається без частки <i>to</i> .				
Should	Обов'язок Попередження, дорікання ввічливого характеру Порада, прохання надати пораду	You should do it till tomorrow. You should be punctual. You should stop smoking. Should I talk to him about this?	— —	— —
			You shouldn't be sitting in the sun.	—

	Припущення, здогад на основі досвіду або фактів	He should be out now, because he usually takes his dog for a walk at this time.	She should be watching TV at this time. She does it every evening.	—
	Надання інструкцій	You should write names with	—	—

Should має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Після *should* інфінітив повнозначного дієслова вживається без частки *to*. *Should* має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Після *should* інфінітив повнозначного дієслова вживається без частки *to*.

Will	Намір, рішучість	I will never do it again. He will have his way.	—	—
	Ввічливе прохання, запрошення	Will you have a cup of coffee? Sit down, will you? You will forgive me, won't you?	—	—
	Воля	Say if you will but I will not change my mind.	— —	— —
	Частотність, кількоразовість дії	She will sit for hours under the oak tree looking at the lake.	— —	— —
	Відмова щось робити	The doctor knows I will not be operated.	—	—
	Здогад, міркування, припущення	This will be your son's photograph.	—	He will have caught the last bus.

Will має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Після *will* інфінітив повнозначного дієслова вживається без частки *to*.

Would	Ввічливе прохання	Would you help me, please?	—	—
-------	-------------------	-------------------------------	---	---

Would + Simple Infinitive відносить дію до минулого у значеннях:

- воля, намір, рішучість: I said, I would do anything for him.
- відмова щось робити: He was wet through but he wouldn't change his clothes.
- частотність, кількоразовість дії: He would go to the river every morning while living in the country.

Ought to	Моральний обов'язок, повинність, порада, пропозиція	Parents and children ought to help each other. You ought to go and see her.	—	—
	Імовірність, припущення на основі досвіду або фактів	She ought to be at home by now; she left the shop an hour ago.	—	She ought to have left the shop two hours ago.
	Дорікання	You ought to be more polite with your parents.	—	You ought to have chosen more suitable time to tell me the news.
<i>Ought to</i> має одну форму для всіх осіб в однині і множині. Після <i>ought</i> уживається частка <i>to</i> перед інфінітивом повнозначного дієслова.				
Need	Необхідність або відсутність потреби щось робити	He needn't go there. Need I repeat it?		It was obvious that you needn't have protested.
<i>Need</i> має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Після <i>need</i> інфінітив повнозначного дієслова вживається без частки <i>to</i> .				
Dare	Сміти, насмілюватися щось робити	I dare say I looked a little confused.	—	—
<i>Dare</i> має одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини. Після <i>dare</i> не вживається частка <i>to</i> перед інфінітивом повнозначного дієслова.				
Be to	Обов'язок за домовленістю або згідно з	We are to discuss your report next time.	—	—
	Можливість або неможливість щось зробити	Where is he to be found?	—	—
<i>Be</i> вживається у Present і Past Simple. Після <i>be</i> вживається частка <i>to</i> перед інфінітивом повнозначного дієслова.				

2. Reading and translating the text:

SEASONS AND WEATHER, CLIMATE

As we know the weather depends on the season and climate of the country, and the) latter depends on the **geographical position** of the country.

Our country, Ukraine, has a **moderate-continental** climate. England has a **rather** damp climate **due** to the effect of the warm **current** of the Gulf-Stream. The British Isles **are surrounded** by the ocean and have an **insular climate**.

The USA have an **equable** continental climate, except for Florida and the Mexican coast, where the climate is tropical and **subtropical**.

The weather changes with the change **of** the season. **Consider** autumn, **for** example. **In** autumn the sky is often cloudy, the **sun hides behind** the clouds and then appears again. Its rays have already lost their strength and the sun is not so bright now as it was in summer. The air is **moist**. Days get shorter and the nights longer. As autumn is a rainy season, the weather is mostly **dull**. And, of course, it is not **attractive**. As a **matter of fact**, I don't like rain of any kind, even if it just **drizzles**. But there is a **spell** of sunny weather in late September, which we call **Indian summer**, when the sun shines brightly, the sky is rather **cloudless** and there is a carpet of **multicoloured** leaves on the ground. It is really golden autumn, as the poets have sung it. But in **any** case, nature begins to fade away. Later the **frost will cover the ground** at night and **remind** us about winter coming. As for me, I am not fond of autumn, but there are a lot of people trying to look at the reverse side of the medal. Strange as it may seem, they prefer autumn to any other season. As they say, **it is the time of harvest**, tasty fruits and vegetables, the time of beautiful golden leaves, the time when nature is very attractive. **But** many men – many minds.

Some people are fond of winter. They consider winter to be the healthiest season. In winter we can go in for winter kinds of sports: **skating, skiing, tobogganing**. **In** winter the sun seldom shines, its rays are **pale**, it sets early and rises late. The air is frosty, **hard frost** sets in, large **snowflakes** slowly fall to the ground, the streets are **slippery** with ice. The rivers and lakes are covered with a thick sheet of ice, they are **frozen**. **The icicles glitter** in the sun, the temperature falls and the snow may fall thick. Going out in such weather is not pleasant and old people prefer to stay at home. But children enjoy being out-of-doors. They like to make a snow man and to throw snowballs. Their cheeks **are** burning with frost.

How **bitterly cold** it is!

By the end of the winter the temperature rises and the snow begins to **melt**. **Thaw** sets in. The sun grows warmer and soon there won't be any ice but plenty of water. The rivers are in **flood**.

Nature awakens from its long winter sleep. The **birds** come back from the warm lands, the trees begin to **bud** and soon tiny green leaves will appear. Thin new **blades** of grass come up, the fruit trees begin to **blossom**. "April showers bring May flowers," as the proverb goes. Everything looks **magic** covered with green carpet. The farmers till the soil and **sow** the seed. We all welcome the **advent** of spring. Nature looks full of promise. Spring is the season of hopes, it's the season of revival of nature and people's dreams. It's my favourite season, I must admit.

After spring the summer comes. As the great Russian poet Pushkin said, "Oh, summer fine! I'd love you, but for the **heat**, the **mosquitoes** and **flies!**" In fact, sometimes the heat is **oppressive**. But people usually like summer, because they have their holidays. It's a good time for going to the seashore or a river beach, to bask in the sun, to become sunburnt, to swim, to pick berries and mushrooms, to gather flowers. We try to spend much time outdoors. But the weather is changeable in summer. It is the time of showers, rains and thunderstorms. The days become longer and the nights shorter. We can enjoy resting after hard work during the whole year.

To cut the long story short, I must confess that every season is beautiful and attractive in its own way. And as one of the famous poets says, "I see no reason to speak in prize of any season."

3. Word List on the Subject "Seasons and Weather, Climate":

geographical position – *географічне положення*

rather damp – *достатньо вологий*
effect – *вплив*

to be surrounded – *бути оточеним*

moderate-continental – *помірно-континентальний*

cloudy – *хмарний*

equable – *одноманітний, рівномірний*

due to – *завдяки*

current – *течія*

tropical – *тропічний*

to consider – *міркувати, розмірковувати*

insular climate – *острівний клімат*

multicoloured – кольоровий, барвистий, різнобарвний
strength – сила
to hide – ховати(ся)
as a matter of fact – справа у тому, що; фактично
spell – короткий проміжок часу
cloudless – безхмарний
in any case – в будь-якому випадку
frost – мороз
to remind – нагадувати
harvest – жнива, врожай
to freeze (froze; frozen) – замерзати
seldom – рідко
hard frost – сильний мороз
slippery – ковзкий, ненадійний
it is sloppy – мокро, вкрито калюжами
to burn – горіти
to melt – танути
flood – прилив, повінь
icicle – крижана бурулька
shower – злива
to till – обробляти (землю)
to sow – сіяти, засівати
heat – спека
fly – муха
thunderstorm – гроза
it is warm – тепло
it is cool – прохолодно
it is slippery – слизько
it is gloomy – хмарно
it is foggy – туманію
it is windy – вітряно
breeze; gentle wind – легкий вітер, бриз
hail – град
lightning – блискавка
hurricane – ураган
shower – злива

to cover the ground – вкривати землю
moist – вологий, вологий
attractive – привабливий, звабливий
to drizzle – мрячити, мжичити (про дощ)
Indian summer – бабине літо
subtropical – субтропічний
to fade away – в'янути
dull – похмурий
reverse – зворотний
skating – катання на ковзанах
tobogganing – катання на санчатах, санний спорт
pale – блідий
snowflake – сніжинка
skiing – катання на лижах
to glitter – блищати, блимати, мерехтіти
bitterly cold – дуже холодно
thaw – відлига
to bud – пускати бруньки
to blossom – квітнути, розквітати
magic – чарівний
soil – ґрунт
advent – пришестья, прихід
mosquito – комаха
oppressive – обтяжливий
it is cold – холодно
it is hot – спекотно
it is chilly – прохолодно
blade – лист, пагін
it is frosty – морозно
it is snowy – сніжно
it is sunny – сонячно
snowfall – опади у вигляді снігу, снігопад
thunderstorm – гроза
rainbow – райдуга
icy sheet – крижаний покрив
rainfall – опади у вигляді дощу

4. Answer the Questions on the Weather. Write the weather forecast for today and tomorrow:

1. What kind of day is it today? (It's ...)

2. What kind of day was it yesterday? (It was ...)
3. What kind of day do you think it'll be tomorrow? (I think it'll be ...)
4. What is the weather like?
5. What does the weather look like?
6. What do you think of the weather?
7. How do you like the (*or*: our) weather?
8. What kind (sort) of weather has it been since.
9. What has the weather been like lately?
10. What was the weather forecast for today?
11. How long will this terrible (wet, etc.) weather last?

Exercise 5. Answer the following questions:

1. What is your favourite season
2. What climate has Ukraine (Russia. Great Britain. USA;»
3. Do you like autumn? Why?
4. Is autumn a rainy season?
5. What is the weather like in late September?
6. What did the poets say about autumn?
7. Do you like winter? Why?
8. What winter kinds of sports do you prefer?
9. Which is the coldest month of the year?
10. When does nature awaken from the long winter sleeping?
11. Do you like spring? Why?
12. When does nature look full of promise?
13. What did the great Russian poet say about summer? Do you agree with him?
14. Do you like summer? Why?
15. What is the weather like today?

Exercise 6. (based on the topic "Seasons and Weather, Climate"). Fill in the missing words:

1. In autumn the sky is often _____, the sun _____ behind the clouds and then _____ again.
2. As autumn is a rainy season, the cither is mostly _____ and of course, it is not _____.
3. I don't like rain of any kind, even if it just _____.
4. But in any case, nature begins to _____.
5. Strange as it may seem, they _____ autumn to any other season.
6. It is the time of _____, tasty _____ and vegetables, time of beautiful _____ leaves, the time when nature is very _____.
7. They consider winter to be the _____ season.
8. In winter the sun shines _____, its rays are _____, it sets early and _____ late.
9. Large _____ slowly fall to the ground, the streets are _____ with ice.
10. The glitter in _____ the sun.
11. But children enjoy being _____

12. By the end of the winter the temperature _____ and the snow begins to _____.
13. The rivers are in _____.
14. The trees begin to _____ and soon _____ green leaves will appear.
15. Thin new _____ of grass come up, the fruit trees begin to _____.
16. The farmers till the _____ and _____ the seed.
17. We all welcomed and _____ of spring.
18. In fact, sometimes the heat is _____.
19. But the weather is _____ in summer
20. I see no reason to speak _____ of any season.

Exercise 7. For each rhyme place the letter of the best meaning in the space provided:

- a) summer
- b) spring
- c) winter
- d) autumn

1. The trees are green,
Blue skies are seen, _____.
White winter's gone away.
The world looks new and gay.
2. The snow is falling,
The wind is blowing, _____.
The ground is white
All day and all night.
3. Yellow, red and green and brown
See the little leaves come down. _____.
Dancing, dancing in the breeze,
Falling, falling from the trees
4. The sun is shining,
The flowers are blooming, _____.
The sky is blue,
The rains are few.
5. See the pretty snowflakes
Falling from the sky, _____.
On the walls and housetops
Soft and thick they He.
6. The summer is over,
The trees are bare. _____.
There's mist in the garden
And frost in the air.
7. This is the season
When children ski, _____.
And Father Frost

- Brings the New Year tree.
8. This is the season
When fruit is sweet. _____.
This is the season.
When school friends meet
This is the season
When mornings are dark
And birds do not sing
In the wood and the park
9. I see the summer birds fly south.
Now the days are cool. _____.
Do they look down and see
That I am on my way to school?
10. But now is _____.
The branches are bare,
There's ice on the puddles
And frost in the air

Exercise 8. Read the article about dreaming and choose modal which you think is correct in 1-10:

Most of us think that dreams are unimportant, but recent studies show that they ¹ *may / can't* be much more important than we think. We've all woken up trying hard to remember the dream that seemed so important the night before. We feel we ² *could / must* remember it if we tried but we tell ourselves that we ³ *can't / mustn't*. However, we ⁴ *can / can't* all learn to remember our dreams and, once we know how to do this, we ⁵ *mustn't / can* programme them to solve our problems.

The best way to try to understand your dreams is to keep a journal. If you do this, and you ⁶ *must / can't* do it on a regular basis, after a while, you notice that you often have the same dream over and over again.

Every night before you go to bed, train yourself to take several deep breaths and relax. Then say to yourself, "Tonight I want to remember a dream and I will remember a dream. As soon as I wake up I ⁷ *must / haven't got to* write it down". Go to sleep with a pad and pencil beside your bed, expecting to remember. It may sound silly and you may say, "You ⁸ *can't / must* be serious!", but it actually does work! If you don't normally remember your dreams, you often wake up with only a feeling of what you dreamed about – for example, anger or calm – but you ⁹ *can't / must* still write down your feelings. After a few weeks, this routine will start producing results. Then, you ¹⁰ *can't / can* look back at what you've written and try to match what happens in your life with the dreams you've had.

Exercise 9. Complete each sentence with a suitable modal. There may be more than one correct answer:

1. I must round and see Sue. I haven't seen her for ages.
2. You _____ smoke in the library.
3. Paul _____ drive a car so he is having lessons.

4. We went out last night because we _____ do any homework.
5. The phone is ringing. It _____ be my mother.
6. _____ you open the window, please? We _____ go to the party if we don't want to.

Exercise 10 .Complete the sentences with must/mustn't, have to /don't have to or had to. Sometimes more than one form may be possible:

1. Clare isn't coming to the cyber cafe. She _____ revise for her exams.
2. My brother is an actor in Hollywood. _____ he _____ memorise whole scripts?
3. It was raining yesterday, so we _____ cancel the picnic.
4. You _____ talk during the exam.
5. _____ I _____ help with the housework?
6. Michael _____ go to Chicago next week for a business meeting.
7. I _____ spend more time learning vocabulary if I want to improve my English.
8. When I was younger I _____ share my room with my sister.
9. I _____ buy my mother's birthday card today.
10. You _____ smoke if you want to stay.

Exercise 11. Rewrite the first sentence using the verbs in brackets:

Example: *I don't know if Sarah is coming to class today, (might not) – Sarah might not be coming to class today.*

1. I'm sure that isn't Paul because he's on holiday, (can't)
That _____
2. Lucy's not sure whether to go to the cinema, (might not)
Lucy _____
3. There's a possibility that I won't buy a new computer, (may not)
I _____
4. Maybe I'm a genius, (might)
I _____
5. It's possible that Graham is outside, (could)
Graham _____
6. I don't know whether to go to university, (may)
I _____
7. I'm not sure if they will go sailing today. (might)
They _____

Exercise 12. Write sentences with should (have) or ought to (have):

1. Sophie didn't turn off the oven before she went to bed. – *Sophie ought to/should have turned it off.*
2. James smokes in the office. – _____

3. The students left the light on in the classroom. – _____
4. People don't keep the beaches clean. – _____
5. My brother didn't send our grandmother a birthday card. – _____
6. They destroyed parts of the rainforest. – _____

Exercise 13. Fill in: can, can't, couldn't, have to, haven't been able to, should, need to, must or must have:

Dear Mum and Dad,

Here I am in my new flat. Sorry 1) ...haven't been able to/couldn't... write earlier, but, of course, I was busy moving in and unpacking. Now, I just 2) _____ buy curtains and a few rugs to make the flat really homely. When I unpacked, 3) _____ find my toaster anywhere. 4) _____ left it behind in the old flat! I'll come to see you on Sunday 14th. 5) _____ bring my flatmate? If we set off early, we 6) _____ arrive in time for lunch. 7) _____ wait to eat your delicious apple pie! Anyway, 8) _____ go now. There's someone at the door. It 9) _____ be the plumber; he is going to install the washing machine. See you on Sunday.

Love, Judy

Exercise 14. Fill in: could, shall or would:

- Jill: It's such a beautiful day. 1) ...Shall... we go to the beach?
 Mike: Yes, let's go. We 2) _____ all do with a break from studying.
 Sue: 3) _____ you mind if Simon came as well?
 Mike: Of course not! We 4) _____ ask Patty too.
 Sue: Good idea. 5) _____ you like to invite anyone Jill?
 Jill: Well, I 6) _____ see if Rachael's free,
 Sue: 7) _____ I phone them all up and ask?
 Mike: Yes, that's a good idea.

Exercise 15. Rewrite the sentences using must, can't or may:

1. I'm sure she is studying _____.
2. I'm sure she studied _____.
3. I don't think she was studying _____.
4. I don't think she met him _____.
5. Perhaps she wants some help _____.
6. Perhaps he has been working in the garden _____.
7. Perhaps he is working in the garden _____.

Exercise 16. Read the letter and fill in a correct modal verb or expression. Then look at Clare's notes and write what Clare wrote to Ann. Try to use as many different modals as possible:

Dear Clare,

I'm writing to ask if you 1) ..could... give me some advice. I'm a 20-year-old student who 2) _____ survive on the money my parents send me. My parents live in a small village.

When I succeeded in my exams, I 3) _____ move to Leeds to attend university. My parents are over 60 and 4) _____ no longer work. I feel like I 5) _____ be giving them money to help them instead of getting money from them. On top of that, my sister saves school next year and she 6) _____ want to go to university, too. I feel I 7) _____ do something for her as well. There 8) _____ be a way. I think I 9) _____ try to get a job but I 10) _____ think of what I 11) _____ do. It 12) _____ be a good idea to work nights so that I can study during the day. You see, I 13) _____ attend all my lectures or I 14) _____ fail my course. Of course I 15) _____ leave university but I don't want to. I 16) _____ do something soon but what? Please advise me. What 17) _____ I do?

Regards,
Ann Wood

Exercise 17. Match a beginning from A with an ending from B. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect:

A

- a She couldn't afford the shoes because ...
- b By the time George retired ...
- c Hilda and Jerry bought a new car ...
- d Kate needed some advice ...
- e When Grandma died, nobody knew that...

B

- 1. ... with the money they (*win*) in a competition.
- 2. ... because she (*never/invest*) money before.
- 3. ... she (*spend*) all her money on presents for her family.
- 4. ... she (*save*) thousands of pounds in a box.
- 5. ... he (*earn*) enough money to buy a holiday home.

Exercise 18. Use the proper article. Pay attention to the use of the article with the names of seasons:

1. _____ winter was bitterly cold.
2. It was _____ early autumn.
3. _____ summer is my favourite season.
4. October is _____ rainy month.
5. There are many wonderful verses about _____ winter.
6. In _____ spring _____ days become longer and _____ nights grow shorter.
7. _____ children have _____ long vacations in _____ summer and _____ short vacations in _____ winter and _____ spring.
8. _____ summer is _____ good time for sports.
9. It is pleasant to go to _____ country on _____ hot day in _____ summer.
10. It was _____ cold rainy autumn.
11. What is _____ weather like in Siberia in _____ winter?
12. _____ Russian winter is famous for its frosts.
13. Look at _____ sky. It is covered with _____ dark clouds.
- 14.

When it is _____ winter in one part of our country it is already _____ summer in another.

Exercise 19. Fill in with an appropriate past form:

In 1894 a steamship 1) was sailing (sail) across the Atlantic Ocean from England to America. The sun 2) _____ (shine) and a gentle breeze 3) _____ (blow). The ship 4) _____ (sail) for three weeks and was halfway to its destination - New York. The passengers 5) _____ (relax) on deck when suddenly they 6) _____ (hear) a loud bang. They a 7) _____ (jump) up, 8) _____ (run) in to the edge of the boat and 9) _____ (look) over the side. To their horror they saw that they 10) _____ (hit) some hard object which 11) _____ (tear) a hole in the side of the ship. Water 12) _____ (pour) into the steamship at an alarming speed. Fortunately another ship arrived half an hour later, just in time to save everyone on board.

Exercise 20. Translate into English. Pay attention to the sequence of tenses:

1. Йому дуже хотілося поїхати на південь, і ми не думали, що він повернеться так скоро. 2. Він сказав, що, коли він займається, він завжди вимикає радіо. 3. Батько сказав, що ми відправимося, як тільки я закінчу сніданок. 4. Ми говорили про свою майбутню роботу. Петро сказав, що він поїде навчати дітей у своє рідне село, Там хороша школа. 5. У нас було мало часу, оскільки ми виїжджали наступного дня. 6. Він дуже поспішав, оскільки боявся, що сестра чекатиме його. 7. Моя сестричка відчувала себе нещасною, коли отримала двійку за твір. 8. Я піду додому, як тільки кінчу прослуховувати плівку п'ятого уроку. 9. Мій старший брат сказав мені, щоб я не включав магнітофон, якщо я не знаю, як це робити. 10. Я якраз снідав, коли зайшов мій приятель і сказав, що мені доведеться поквапитися, якщо я хочу приєднатися до нього. Вони відправляться рано. 11. Ми вирішили, що поки ти робитимеш переклад, Ганна допомагатиме нам, потім ми допоможемо їй вимити посуд і прибрати кімнату до того, як її мама прийде з роботи. 12. Джон сказав, що він все влаштує сам для нашої поїздки на узбережжя. 13. Ми сподіваємося, що, коли він повернеться, він візьме участь у нашій дискусії про сучасну американську літературу. 14. Він відповів, що ми не зможемо залагодити це питання, поки не поговоримо з деканом. 15. Джемма знала, що Артур не змінить свого рішення, навіть якщо вона дасть йому раду, і, крім того, вона не хотіла давати йому ніяких порад.

Exercise 21. Use the Past Indefinite or the Past Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. Margot (to go) to the door and (to lock) it, and (to return) with the key. 2. He sighed again and again, like one who (to escape) from danger. 3. Then I (to search) for a piece of paper and a pencil, and I (to write) a message for the maid. 4.

He (to make) tea and (to eat) the biscuits which Mrs. Aberdeen (to bring) him. 5. Ansell (to give) an angry sigh, and at that moment there (to be) a tap on the door. 6. When the cinema (to be) over they (to go) for a walk across the dark, damp fields. 7. The door (to open). A tall young woman (to stand) framed in the light that (to fall) from the passage. 8. Cassie (to spend) the night at home, and on entering the dining-room (to glance) at the space above the fire. 9. He (to walk) about our sitting-room all afternoon, murmuring to himself. 10. It (to be) all so sudden that for a moment no one (to know) what (to happen). 11. He (to tell) me that they (to be) at the same public school and (to be) friends ever since. 12. At the age of seventy-four he (to be) excited as a boy about his expedition. 13. Near the door he (to see) the man he (to notice) at the station. 14. The house (to be) much smaller than he (to think) at first.

Exercise 22. Use the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. Yes, Hatte? What you (to say)? 2. He even (not to count) the money that Lammeter (to hold) out to him. 3. I (to look) at her. She (to smile) to herself and (not to answer) my question at once. I (to repeat) it. 4. For some time she (not to realize) where she (to be) and what (to happen). 5. Then she (to get) up and (to go) to the kitchen and (to open) the fridge. 6. Toby and Michael (to smile) at each other and (to begin) to walk slowly towards the lake. 7. The silence in the room (to tell) that the rain (to stop). 8. She (can) not think why she (not to think) of this before, she (to say). 9. He (to go) away on the very day I (to arrive). 10. My mother (to make) sandwiches in the kitchen and (not to hear) the bell. 11. He (to go) to school for the first time with a bunch of flowers in his hand, and it (to seem) to him that everyone (to turn) to look at him. 12. After he (to leave) school he (can) not find a job and (to decide) to go to New York. 13. The grass (to be) damp; it (to tell) us that rain (to fall) in the night. 14. Now he (to look) at me with wide open eyes. 15. He (can) not help thinking that he (to see) that face somewhere before. 16. After he (to read) "The Gadfly" he (to tell) all his friends that he never (to read) a better book. 17. Roger (to say) he (to come) back in an hour. 18. She (to turn) half about and (to see) that the rain (to stop) and it (to be) a little brighter outside. 19. After the war they (to part) and he (to tell) me that he (not to see) her since. 20. She (to go) back to take her gloves and bag which she (to leave) on the hall table. 21. The storm (to pass) and the sun (to shine) on the green leaves of the trees. 22. He (to look) through the window and (not to seem) to notice me.

Exercise 23. Translate into English using the appropriate tenses:

1. Він виїхав того дня, коли я приїхав. 2. Всі ці дні він працював наполегливіше, ніж ти. 3. Чому ти не слухаєш, коли я говорю з тобою? 4. Вона довго працювала в саду. Вона не знала, що відбувається в будинку. 5. Не повертайся, поки не знайдеш його. 6. Ви давно знаєте один одного? 7. Не

говори йому, коли ми приїдемо. 8. Я зараз працюю посилено, щоб наздогнати групу. Я був хворий два тижні. 9. Того вечора у нас було дуже мало часу, оскільки ми виїжджали наступного дня. 10. Маленька Кіті тільки що стрибала по кімнаті; де вона зараз? 11. Наступив вечір, а дощ все йшов. 12. Даруйте, я не знала, що ви мене чекали. 13. Він сказав вам, коли прийде? 14. Я знаю його, давно знаю. 15. Ваш хлопчик дуже підріс за ці місяці. 16. Я був дуже зайнятий з тих пір, як бачив вас востаннє. 17. Я бачу, всі сміються. Ти знову розповідаєш небилиці! (to tell tales) 18. Він сказав, що вони виконують цю роботу з серпня, 19. Вона дивилася на мене з хвилину, потім відвернулася і вийшла з кімнати. 20. Я упевнена, що всі сміятимуться над тобою, якщо ти надінеш цей капелюх. 21. Скільки часу ви займаєтеся спортом? – З дитинства. 22. Дівчинка схопилася з лави, на якій сиділа, і побігла зустрічати матір, яка якраз входила в сад з вулиці. 23. Лекція ще не почалася, і студенти базікали і сміялися. 24. Я побачив його перш, ніж він мене. Він відвернувся, і я зрозумів, що він знову не відповість на мої питання.

Exercise 24. Use the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous, or the Past Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets:

The next morning, when I (to awake), the sun (to shine) brilliantly. It (to be) late and I (to have) no supper the night before, so I (to dress) quickly and (to go) downstairs. I (to be) surprised to find the doors locked and the house empty. A dozen times or more I (to call) out my host's name, but the house (to be) as still as the grave. What it all (to mean)? I (to begin) to doubt my wisdom in being so ready to trust a stranger: I ought to have gone on to the next village, where I (to know) that, friends (to be) awaiting me. Instead, I (to be frightened) by a few drops of rain.

At last, however, I (to hear) footsteps, and soon my host (to appear), looking, I (to think), rather strange. He just (to be) out, he (to say), to feed the horses. But I (to notice) the mud (to be) thick and wet upon his shoes and I (to wonder) where he (to be), and why he (to want) to deceive me.

24. Memory Work:

When the weather is wet
 We must not fret, –
 When the weather is cold
 We must not scold.
 When the weather is warm
 We must not storm, –
 But be thankful together
 Whatever the weather.

Lesson 11

1. Grammar. Direct Speech. Reported Speech. Linking Words.

Say-Tell-Ask

- *Say* is used in Direct Speech. It is also used in Reported Speech when *say* is not followed by the person the words were spoken to.
(Direct Speech) "*can fix it,*" *he said.* (Reported Speech) *He said he could fix it.*
- *Tell* is used in Reported Speech when it is followed by the person the words were spoken to. (Direct Speech) "*I can do it,*" *he said to me.* (Reported Speech) *He told me he could do it.*
- *Ask* is used in reported questions and commands. *Ask* is also used in direct questions. *He said to me, "Please, don't go!" He asked me not to go'. He asked, "Are you OK?" -He asked me if I was OK.*
- We can use *say + to-infinitive* but never "~~*say about*~~". We use *tell sb, speak/talk about* instead. *The boss said to work harder. He spoke/talked about his trips. He told us about his trips.*

Expressions with **say**: *say good morning/evening etc, say something, say one's prayers, say a few words, say so, say no more, say for certain etc*

Expressions with **tell**: *tell the truth, tell a lie, tell (sb) the time, tell sb one's name, tell a story, tell a secret, tell sb the way, tell one from another, tell sb's fortune, tell sb so, tell the difference etc*

Expressions with **ask**: *ask a favour, ask the time, ask a question, ask the price etc*

Direct Speech. Reported Speech.

Пряма мова (Direct Speech)	Непряма мова (Reported Speech)
Tom said to me, "I don't like to live in New York"	Tom told me (that) he didn't like to live in New York.
Том сказав мені: "Мені не подобається жити в Нью-Йорку".	Том сказав мені, що йому не подобається жити в Нью-Йорку.
said to me → told me	

She said, "I often write letters." Вона сказала: "Я часто пишу листи."	She said (that) she often wrote letters. Вона сказала, що часто пише листи.
write → wrote <i>Present Simple → Past Simple</i>	
She said, "I am writing the letter at the moment". Вона сказала: "Я пишу зараз листа".	She said (that) she was writing the letter at that moment. Вона сказала, що зараз пише листа.
am writing → was writing <i>Present Continuous → Past Continuous</i>	

<p>She said, "I have just written the letter". Вона сказала: "Я щойно написала листа."</p>	<p>She said (that) she had just written the letter. Вона сказала, що щойно написала листа.</p>
--	--

have written → had written
Present Perfect → Past Perfect

<p>She said, "I have been writing for an hour". Вона сказала: "Я пишу вже цілу годину."</p>	<p>She said (that) she had been writing for an hour. Вона сказала, що пише вже цілу годину.</p>
---	---

have been writing → had been writing
Present Perfect Continuous → Past Perfect Continuous

<p>She said, "I wrote the letter last night". Вона сказала: "Я написала листа вчора ввечері."</p>	<p>She said (that) she had written the letter the previous night. Вона сказала, що написала листа минулого вечора.</p>
---	--

wrote → had written
Past Simple → Past Perfect

<p>She said, "I was writing the letter at 5 o'clock". Вона сказала: "Я писала листа о п'ятій годині."</p>	<p>She said (that) she had been writing the letter at 5 o'clock. Вона сказала, що писала листа о 5 годині.</p>
---	--

was writing → had been writing
Past Continuous → Past Perfect Continuous

<p>She said, "I had written the letter by 5 o'clock". Вона сказала: "Я написала листа до п'ятої години."</p>	<p>She said (that) she had written the letter by 5 o'clock. Вона сказала, що написала листа до п'ятої години.</p>
--	---

<p>She said, "I had been writing the letter for an hour by 5 o'clock". Вона сказала: "Я писала листа протягом цілої години до п'ятої."</p>	<p>She said (that) she had been writing the letter for an hour by 5 o'clock. Вона сказала, що писала листа протягом цілої години до п'ятої.</p>
--	---

had written → had written
Past Perfect → Past Perfect
had been writing → had been writing
Past Perfect Continuous → Past Perfect Continuous

<p>She said, "I'll write the letter tomorrow". Вона сказала: "Я напишу листа завтра."</p>	<p>She said (that) she would write the letter the next day. Вона сказала, що напише листа наступного дня.</p>
---	---

will write → would write
Future Simple → Future Simple in the Past

She said, "I'll be writing at 5 o'clock." Вона сказала: "Я буду писати о п'ятій."	She said (that) she would be writing at 5 o'clock. Вона сказала, що буде писати о п'ятій.
will be writing → would be writing <i>Future Continuous → Future Continuous in the Past</i>	
She said, "I'll have written the letter by 5 o'clock." Вона сказала: "Я напишу листа до п'ятої."	She said (that) she would have written the letter by 5 o'clock. Вона сказала, що напише листа до п'ятої.
will have written → would have written <i>Future Perfect → Future Perfect in the Past</i>	

Linking Words

Positive Addition	and, both ... and, not only ... but (also/as well), too, moreover, in addition to, furthermore, further, also, not to mention the fact that, besides	<i>She's clever and rich.</i>
Negative Addition	neither ... nor, nor, neither, either	<i>Neither Barry nor Kevin knows how to drive. Barry doesn't know how to drive. Nor does</i>
Contrast	but, not ... but, although, while, whereas, despite, even if, even though, on the other hand , in contrast, however, (and) yet, at the same time	<i>Riding a bicycle may not be as comfortable as driving a car; however it is much more environmentally friendly.</i>
Similarity	similarly, likewise, in the same way, equally	<i>A glass of milk before you go to bed may help you sleep. Similarly, a hot bath could do the trick.</i>
Concession	but, even so, however, (and) still, (and) yet, nevertheless, on the other hand, although, even though, despite/in spite of, regardless of, admittedly, considering, whereas, while, nonetheless	<i>He carried on playing until the end of the game, even though he had a broken toe.</i>
Alternative	or, on the other hand, either ... or, alternatively	<i>You could tell her the bad news, or/ on the other hand / alternatively, you could let her find out herself.</i>

Emphasis	besides, not only this but ... also, as well, what is more, in fact, as a matter of fact, to tell you the truth, actually, indeed, let alone	<i>I'm afraid you are not qualified for this job and, what is more, you are far too young.</i>
Exemplification	as, such as, like, for example, for instance, particularly, especially, in particular	<i>All the performers were good, but Pavarotti in particular was magnificent.</i>
Clarification	that is to say, specifically, in other words, to put it another way, mean	<i>She's angry. Specifically, she's angry at you.</i>
Cause / Reason	as, because, because of, since, on the grounds that, seeing that, due to, in view of, owing to, for, now that, so	<i>She decided to order a salad now that she had started her diet.</i>
Manner	as, (in) the way, how, the way in which, (in) the same way (as), as if, as though	<i>The coach explained how the team could beat their opponents.</i>
Condition	if, in case, assuming (that), on condition (that), provided (that), providing (that), unless, in the event (that), in the event of, as/so long as, granted/granting (that), whether, whether...or (alternative condition), only if, even if, otherwise, or(else), in case of	<i>The travel agency will contact you in the event that / in case your flight is changed.</i>
Consequence of a condition	consequently, then, under those circumstances, if so, if not, so, therefore, in that case, otherwise, thus	<i>You may be caught by the enemy. If so, tell them nothing.</i>
Purpose	so that, so as (not) to, in order (not) to, in order that, for fear (that), in case, lest	<i>Make a note of our appointment in your diary in case you forget about it.</i>
Effect / Result	such/so ... that, consequently, for this reason, as a consequence, thus, therefore, so	<i>He was the only child of a rich banker and, as a consequence, he was very spoilt.</i>
Comparison	as ... as, than, half as ... as, nothing like, the ... the, twice as ... as, less ... than	<i>Her second novel is nothing like her first</i>
Time	when, whenever, as, while, now (that), before, until, till, after, since	<i>I like to visit the cathedral whenever I'm in Durham.</i>
Place	where, wherever	<i>Park your car wherever you want to.</i>

Exception	but (for), except (for), apart from	<i>We had a lovely holiday, apart from that one day when it rained.</i>
Relative	who, whom, whose, which, what, that	<i>There's the man whose house was burnt down.</i>
Chronological	<i>beginning:</i> initially, first..., at first, to start/begin with, first of all	<i>First of all, I'd like to thank my mother...</i>
	<i>continuing:</i> secondly ..., after this/that, second..., afterwards, then, next, before this	<i>Then, I must thank everyone involved in making this wonderful film...</i>
	<i>concluding:</i> finally, at last, in the end, eventually, lastly, last but not least	<i>Finally, I want to thank you, my fans.</i>
Reference	considering, regarding, respect/regard/reference to, this/to the fact that	concerning, with respect/regard/reference to, in respect/regard/reference to
		<i>Considering all the evidence, we find the accused "not guilty". I'm writing with reference to your report on whales.</i>
Summarising	in conclusion, in summary, to sum up, as I have said, as (it) was previously stated, on the whole, in all, all in all, altogether, in short, briefly, to put it briefly	<i>To sum up, the government must spend more money on public services.</i>

2. Read and translate the following text:

KYIV

Kyiv is the capital of Ukraine. It is one of the oldest cities of Europe and therefore there are many historical places in it. It was the capital of ancient Rus, cradle of three fraternal peoples – the Russian, the Ukrainian and the Byelorussian.

Nowadays it is a large political, industrial, scientific and cultural centre of Ukraine. Its population equals nearly 3 million people. It is the seat of the Supreme Rada and the Cabinet of Ministers.

Kyiv is famous not only for its history (it was called "the Mother of All Rus' Cities"), but for its beauty, for the abundance of places of historic interest in it. It is situated on the picturesque banks of the Dnieper River.

Kyiv's monuments of the past attract a lot of visitors. They are impressed by Kyiv-Pechersky Monastery which stands on the green hill above the Dnieper and its sparkling gold cupolas can be seen from outside the capital. The huge gateway

from Volodymyrska Street opens on the territory of another ancient monument – St. Sophia's Cathedral which is a state architectural and historical preserve. It was founded in 1037 during the reign of Yaroslav the Wise. On the other corner of Volodymyrska Street you can see the Golden Gate. Shevchenko Memorial, Vydubetsky Monastery, Askold's Grave, Church of St. Andrew are really worth sightseeing too. In the Park of Immortal Glory there is a Tomb of Unknown Soldier, over which an eternal fire burns.

There are a lot of museums in Kyiv: the Historical Museum, the Museum of Ukrainian Art, the Museum of Russian Art. the Museum of Western and Oriental Art, Shevchenko Museum, Lesya Ukrainka Memorial Museum and others.

Kyiv is the centre of Ukrainian culture. Many research institutes and higher educational establishments are to be found here. It is famous for its; theatres and concert halls such as Taras Shevchenko Opera and Ballet Theatre, Musical Comedy Theatre, Puppet Theatre, Conservatoire and Philharmonics, the Concert Hall "Ukraine." The performances staged at these theatres are always of great demand.

The picturesque green banks and hills, plentiful flowerbeds with millions of different flowers, wonderful beaches of the Dnieper, Kreshchatik, one of the widest and most beautiful streets in our country – all this adds up to the beauty of the Ukrainian capital.

3. Word List on the Subject "Kyiv":

cradle – *колыска*

picturesque – *мальовничий*

Kyiv-Pechersky Monastery – *Києво-Печерська Лавра (монастир)*

Unknown soldier – *Невідомий солдат*

tomb – *могила*

eternal fire – *Вічний вогонь*

beach – *пляж*

abundance – *достаток*

to attract – *приваблювати*

Church of St. Andrew – *церква св. Андрія*

the Park of Immortal Glory – *парк Вічної Слави*

research – *науково-дослідний*

Askold's Grave – *Аскольдова могила*

In the City (Town)

museum – *музей*

gallery – *галерея*

cinema; movies (Am.) – *кінотеатр*

information desk – *довідкове бюро*

restaurant – *ресторан*

cafeteria (coffee shop, cafe,

circus – *цирк*

theatre – *театр*

hotel – *готель*

shop – *магазин*

snack bar (cafeteria) – *закусочна*

tube, underground; subway (Am.) –

luncheonette) – закусошна, кав'ярня
bridge – міст
bank – банк
market – ринок
taxi stand – стоянка таксі
bus stop – автобусна зупинка
church – церква
post-office – пошта
subway – підземний перехід
roadway – бруківка
crossroad – перехрестя
repair shop – майстерня
hairdresser – жіноча перукарня
dry cleaning – хімчистка
chemistry (Eng.), Drug Store (Am.) – аптека

метро
city library – міська бібліотека
saving office – ощадна каса
car park – автостоянка
road – дорога
hospital – лікарня
park – парк
traffic light – світлофор
police station – поліцейська дільниця
crossing – перехід
pavement – тротуар
shoe repair – ремонт взуття
barber – чоловіча перукарня
laundry – пральня
cemetery – цвинтар

Sightseeing

attractions – визначні пам'ятки
tower – вежа
cathedral – собор
monument – пам'ятник
column – колона
plaque – меморіальна дошка
architectural ensemble – архітектурний ансамбль
fountain – фонтан
Exhibition Hall – виставочний зал
schematic map – карта-схема
armoury – оружейна палата
chapel – каплиця
icon – ікона
sightseer – турист, що оглядає визначні пам'ятки

dome – купол
palace – палац
stadium – стадіон
obelisk – обеліск
memorial – меморіал
relic; monument – пам'ятник
burial-vault – гробниця, місце поховання
pavilion – павільйон
panorama – панорама
structure, edifice – споруда
picture gallery – картинна галерея
exhibition – виставка
fresco (frescoes) – фреска
environs – околиці
bell-tower – дзвіниця

Exercise 4. Give the following sentences in indirect speech, make the necessary changes:

1. My father says: "Why don't you read English newspapers?" 2. Maggy says: "Why are you looking at me in that way?" 3. My teacher says: "You've got a number of mistakes in your translation." 4. She says: "What are you going to be when you leave the Institute?" 5. I say: "I'm sure I am going to be a teacher." 6. He says: "Italy is in the South of Europe." 7. My cousin says: "When are you coming to see us?" 8. She says: "I like the poem. I am going to learn it by heart." 9. Mother says: "Don't be late for dinner." 10. Our teacher says: "You must work more systematically." 11. They say: "Don't stay here any longer. It is getting dark." 12.

The girl says: "We have a lot of English books at home." 13. The child says: "What are you doing?" 14. The mother says: "Why are you crying? Come up to me." 15. The boys say: "We want to help you, father." 16. Mr. Smith says: "Have dinner with us." 17. The mother says; "Eat up your porridge, children." 18. The teacher says: "Find the Thames on the map, Mike." 19. They say: "Don't make so much noise, John. The baby is asleep."

Exercise 5. Use the following sentences in indirect speech:

1. He said: "I want to see you today." 2. She said: "I am free tonight. May I come to see you?" 3. Mother said to me: "I feel bad today;" 4. The students of Group 106 said to us: "We have four exams this spring." 5. The pupil said to the teacher: "I can do my homework after dinner." 6. The teacher said: "You work hard, I know. You are a good boy." 7. The teacher said to the students: "We have 18 hours of English a week." 8. The dean said at the meeting: "The first-year students must work well." 9. The girl asked: "May I wait for my friend here?" 10. She said: "Are you going to the club together?" 11. The old man said to her: "You can sing perfectly." 12. My sister said to me: "You look very well, I hope you are all right?" 13. The girl said to me: "I am going to become a doctor." 14. Some of our students said to him: "You are not right. You don't work hard enough." 15. He said to us: "I agree, I don't always work systematically." 16. My uncle said to us: "I buy several newspapers every day." 17. "You are an excellent cook. Everything is so tasty," my guest said.

Exercise 6. Use the following sentences in indirect speech. Make other necessary changes:

1. He says: "I am sure she will come in time." 2. She says: "I shall be able to read English newspapers without a dictionary in a year." 3. They say: "We shan't go to the Institute on Sunday." 4. Mr. Sandford says: "I shall have to pay much money for the house." 5. Peter says: "I'll be waiting for you at the station." 6. Mary says: "I'll be back soon." 7. She says: "What are you going to do when you come home?" 8. She says: "I hope I'll soon speak English as well as you do." 9. He says: "I am sure it will rain tomorrow." 10. They say: "We'll go for a walk if it is hot tomorrow." 11. She says: "I am busy today but I'll be much busier tomorrow." 12. Jane says: "I shall come earlier tomorrow." 13. John says: "I shan't be able to meet them tomorrow." 14. He says: "I'll come if I am free." 15. She says: "I'll go to the cinema in the evening if I am not very tired." 16. My mother says: "You'll be sleepy tomorrow if you don't go to bed at once." 17. My aunt says: "I shan't be thirsty if I have some grapes." 18. My mother says: "Don't serve dessert before I clear the table."

Exercise 7. Write the following sentences in indirect speech using the Past Perfect):

1. Roger said: "My uncle has been here more than once". 2. Alice asked me:

"Did you spend much time there?" 3. Ben asked me: "When did you join our circle?" 4. She said: "Our group has worked in the lab today." 5. Bill said: "I remember she was good at singing." 6. The mother asked her son: "Why have you spent so much money on sweets?" 7. Fanny asked her friend: "Where did you go during your vacation?"

Exercise 8. Let one of the students give a brief impression of his visit to the theatre. Find out some more details about the performance by asking questions:

Model:

A: Last night I was at one of the best theatres in Moscow. The performance was perfect and I enjoyed every minute of it. Though my seat/Was in the balcony I could see the stage very well and hear each sound perfectly. Guess where I was and what I saw.

B: Were you. at the Art Theatre?

A: No, I wasn't.

B: But you say you could hear each sound perfectly!

A: So I could. I meant the music.

B: Ah, that means you were at the Bolshoi Theatre.

A: That's right.

B: Was it an opera or a ballet?

A: Try to guess.

B: And who is the composer?

A: P. I. Tchaikovsky.

B: Is the scene, laid in Russia?

A: No, it isn't.

B: Was the scenery beautiful?

A: Oh, yes, it was so beautiful that there was a storm of applause when the curtain rose.

B: It's a fairy-tale, isn't it?

A: In a way, yes.

Exercise 9. Listen carefully to the following sentences. Concentrate your attention on the intonation of the author's words preceding direct speech:

1. He said: "They were very glad to get a letter from you." 2. He asked: "What else can I do for you?" 3. George said: "Let's go to London early on Wednesday morning." 4. He said: "I want two stalls if you've got them." 5. She said: "They'll do very well." 6. He said: "I don't quite like the final scene in the play."

Exercise 10. Read the following drill sentences according to Model. Concentrate your attention on the intonation of the author's words preceding direct speech:

Model: *My → mother > said: / "You → look \tired."*

1. He said: "You are wrong." 2. She said: "Don't hurry. The performance is not over." 3. They said: "We enjoyed ourselves at the party." 4. He said: "There is no doubt she tells the truth." 5. He said: "She accepted the invitation." 6. They say: "Our seats were far from the stage." 7. They said: "The best seats at theatres are those in the stalls."

Exercise 11. Read the following drill sentences according to Model. Concentrate your attention on the intonation of the author's words preceding direct speech:

Model: *She \said: / "The → acting was \excellent".*

1. She said: "I like drama and ballet, but I don't quite like opera." 2. He said: "The attendant showed us to our seats and gave us the programme." 3. She said: "Please book two more tickets for me." 4. He said: "Would you like to go to the theatre with me?" 5. The attendant said: "Would you like the programme?" 6. She asked: "What do you think of the play?" 7. She asked: "Have you got any seats for tomorrow?" 8. She said: "The acting was excellent."

Exercise 12. Change the following sentences into indirect speech:

1. He said "I attend the language laboratory almost every day. I am working hard at my pronunciation, and I hope I'll make good progress soon." 2. Helen said to Roger, "I'll join you in a moment if you wait for me at the entrance door." 3. Robert asked his friend: "Where are you going for the week-end? I hope you won't stay indoors all the time?" 4. Helen said: "Don't even ring me up. I'll be working at my translation." 5. Mother said to the children: "If Aunt Emily invites us we'll spend the week-end at the seaside." 6. "I'm sure I'll still be sleeping when you start. I don't want to get up so early," said Alice. 7. "I recommend you to join our company if you want to have a good rest," said Roger, "we are going to the river, I know a nice place for bathing there." 8. She said: "The tall trees make a green corridor, and their leaves are murmuring above our heads while we walk along that wonderful alley." 9. "Are you quarrelling again?" he asked. "Mother will be angry with you." 10. "If you watch TV for a long time, you'll get tired," said Mother to the boy. 11. He said: "Hurry up! Find your hockey stick. I'll be waiting for you outside because it's too hot here" 12. She said: "I'll give him your note if you like. I'll be seeing him tomorrow as we work together."

Exercise 13. Retell the following jokes in indirect speech:

- a) Boy of Six: Daddy, when I grow up I want to be an Arctic Explorer. '
Father: That's fine, Bill.
Boy: But I want to go into training at once.
Father: But how?

Boy: Well, I want a dollar a day for ice-cream, so I'll get used to the cold.

b) Customer: I should like a book, please.

Bookseller: Something light?

Customer: That doesn't matter. I have my car with me.

c) Landlord: I must remind you that I will not tolerate children, dogs, cats or parrots. And no piano playing. And no radio. Is that clear?

Tenant: Yes, sir, but I think you must know that my fountain-pen scratches a little.

Exercise 14. Change the following sentences into indirect speech:

1. My father said: "Oh, I forget, I never remember such things in time;" 2. "Don't leave your exercise book at home as we'll need it at the lesson," I said to Alice. 3. "As far as I know Jim passed his entrance exams with excellent marks," he replied. 4. Nell said: "As far as I know he got a good mark in Physics." 5. "Is it true that in England the grass remains green all the year round?" asked the boy. 6. "What are you going to do at the coming week-end?" he inquired. 7. "Have you ever been married, Captain Meadows?" I asked him. 8. Michael said to me: "Mary is coming with the 5.20 train. Will you do me a favour and meet her at the station?" 9. "We were not given any further information about the course of the ship," said the passenger. 10. "I have never seen her. How could I possibly recognize her?" said Mike. 11. "I shall be back about tea-time, I expect," he said. "There's no one coming for dinner." 12. "Anne will be leaving school next year," she said. 13. "Neither I nor my married sister have ever gone farther than Glasgow," she said. 14. He said in an apologetic manner, "I've been looking for you, Nancy".

Exercise 15. Replace the underlined words with synonymous ones:

Sarah had had a terrific year 1) particularly after she was given a promotion in the summer. She had worked hard all year and, 2) even though she was exhausted, it had been worthwhile. She was happy because she had been given a rise. 3) On the other hand she had a lot more responsibility than before. She didn't mind re change; 4) besides it was a good challenge. 5) Apart from opposition from one or two of her colleagues, she was really enjoying her new position. 6) As a matter of fact, she had never been happier. Her home life had improved, 7) too. She was now on friendly terms with 8) both her mother and her father. They had come to an agreement and, 9) although her parents still considered her their little girl, she was given more freedom 10) on the grounds that she was, after all, 20!

- 1) especially, in particular 4) _____ 7) _____
2) _____ 5) _____ 8) _____
3) _____ 6) _____ 9) _____

Exercise 16. Join the sentences, then identify the function of the linking words in brackets:

1. I don't like doing the washing-up. My flatmate usually does the domestic jobs, (besides)

....*I don't like doing the washing-up: besides, my flatmate usually does the domestic jobs. (positive addition)*.....

2. I can't afford to lend her any more money. She already owes me £150. (moreover)

.....

3. I enjoy my job. It's very well paid. (not only ... but also)

.....

4. He never does any homework. He managed to get a good mark in the test. (even though)

.....

5. I'm afraid you're not tall enough to be a model. You're not very photogenic. (what is more)

.....

6. He plays football like a professional. He isn't a professional though. (as if)

.....

7. She's a very good teacher. She has no experience. (considering)

.....

8. He has never bought anyone a present. He's totally mean. (in other words)

.....

9. She is quite shy, She wants to be an actress. (and yet)

.....

10. I'm going to phone him again. He doesn't want to speak to me. (even if)

.....

Exercise 17. Fill in: not ... but also, despite, unfortunately, because, even though, particularly, however, besides, seeing that or both ... and:



Sally had a bad year, 1) particularly after she had lost her job in the spring. She was exhausted 2) _____ physically _____ mentally and she needed a break. 3) _____ the fact that she was going alone, she was looking forward to her holiday. She had booked a hotel in a quiet resort 4) _____ she wanted to relax; 5) _____ she couldn't stand crowded tourist resorts. It was supposed to be the holiday of a lifetime. 6) _____ that wasn't to be the case. 7) _____ only was the plane delayed for seven hours, _____, when she arrived at the hotel, her room had been double booked. 8) _____ they were to blame, the hotel owners offered her alternative accommodation. 9) _____, the

other hotel was in a noisy resort. 10) _____ she wasn't happy with the arrangement, she eventually had to accept their offer.

Exercise 18. Replace the underlined words with synonymous ones:

Dear Mr. Greenlee,

I regret to inform you that your account is £ 1,560 overdrawn. 1) Consequently, I must ask you to return your credit cards immediately, 2) in order not to increase your debt. 3) In addition, you should not write any more cheques 4) until we have discussed the matter. 5) In view of the fact that you are currently unemployed, it may not be possible to extend your loan facilities. 6) In fact, arrangements must be made to pay off the amount as soon as possible. 7) Initially, the bank will assess your financial status. 8) After this, a weekly repayment will be decided upon. Your credit cards may be returned to you 4) provided that the repayments are kept up. 10) In conclusion, we sincerely hope we can deal with this matter to our mutual satisfaction.

Yours sincerely,
J. Cash
(Midway Bank PLC)

- 1) Therefore, Thus 4) _____ 7) _____ 10) _____
2) _____ 5) _____ 8) _____
3) _____ 6) _____ 9) _____

Exercise 19. Fill in: who, as ... as, whenever, wherever, in this way, in particular, although, both ... and, such as, to sum up or specifically:

In all history there has never been a magician 1) as famous as Harry Houdini. 2) _____ he was well known for his incredible escape acts, 3) _____ freeing himself from a locked safe at the bottom of a river. People recognized him 4) _____ he went and 5) _____ he performed, huge crowds gathered to watch. But, 6) _____ he was a master of the art of illusion, he was a very honest man 7) _____ fought for truth and justice. 8) _____, he campaigned against spiritualists and other people who claimed to have supernatural powers. 9) _____, he made quite a few enemies in the "entertainment" business. 10) _____, there have been few men this century who have combined 11) _____ talent _____ honesty in such an admirable way.

Exercise 20. Fill in: whether or not, alternatively, not only ... but also, what is more, as a matter of fact, however, owing to, neither ... nor, providing that, in order to, at the same time, firstly or thus:

There are many things you can do 1) in order to reduce pollution

levels in the city. 2) _____ to decrease the amount of traffic on the streets, you should ask yourself 3) _____ your car journey is really necessary. It could be cheaper and healthier to walk. 4) _____, it could even be quicker, 5) _____ the amount of traffic at certain times of the day. 6) _____ you could use public transport, 7) _____ avoiding the stressful experience of driving in the city and 8) _____ freeing yourself from the time-consuming necessity of finding a parking space. 9) _____, when it comes to speed, health and convenience, 10) _____ walking _____ the public transport system can compare with the simple bicycle. 11) _____ has it been proven to be faster than a car for most city journeys _____ you can park it almost anywhere 12) _____ you lock it securely. 13) _____, it is the cleanest and most energy-efficient form of transport known to man.

Exercise 21. Replace the underlined words with synonymous ones:

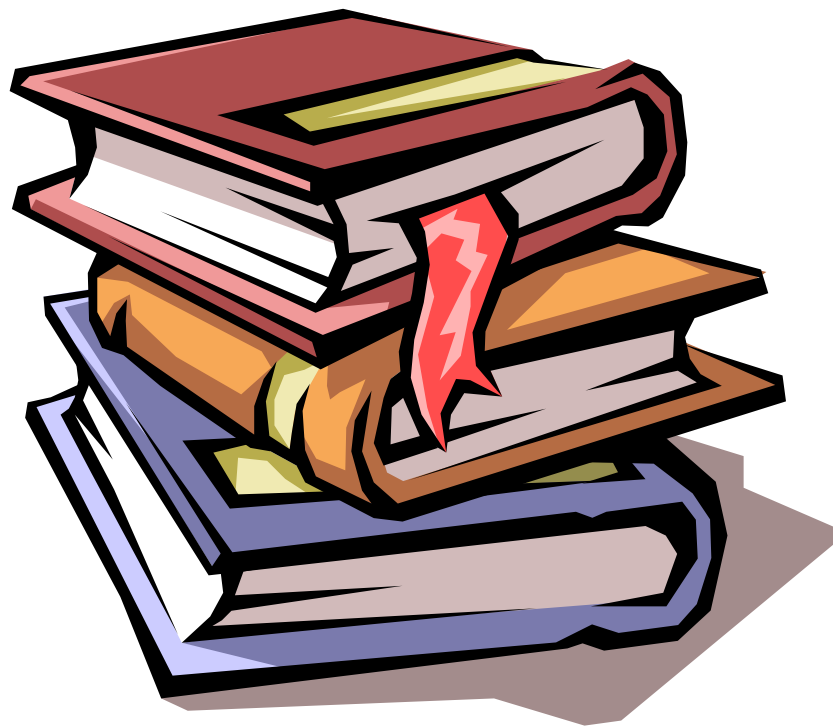
She had given her daughter permission to go on the trip 1) provided that they were accompanied by an adult. She was worried sick that something would go wrong and constantly told Sally that 2) in the event of an accident she should ring up immediately. She didn't want her daughter to go but, 3) so as not to seem overprotective, she 4) finally agreed. All Sally's friends were going on the trip 5) apart from Julie and she knew what they all thought of her. Julie's parents wouldn't let her do anything 6) for fear that something terrible might happen. 7) Consequently she had very few friends. 8) Whenever there was a party, she was never invited. 9) On the whole, Sally's mother decided that 10) despite the risks involved, she had to allow her daughter some freedom 11) lest she too might become unpopular with her schoolmates.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1) <u>as long as</u> | 4) _____ | 7) _____ | 10) _____ |
| 2) _____ | 5) _____ | 8) _____ | 11) _____ |
| 3) _____ | 6) _____ | 9) _____ | |

Exercise 22. Change the following sentences into indirect speech:

1. My father said: "Oh, I forget, I never remember such things in time."
2. "Don't leave your exercise book at home as we'll need it at the lesson," I said to Alice.
3. "As far as I know Jim passed his entrance exams with excellent marks," he replied.
4. Nell said: "As far as I know he got a good mark in Physics."
5. "Is it true that in England the grass remains green all the year round?" asked the boy.
6. "What are you going to do at the coming week-end?" he inquired.
7. "Have you ever been married, Captain Meadows?" I asked him.
8. Everybody speaks well of the girl.
9. Michael said to me: "Mary is coming with the 5.20 train. Will you do me a favour and meet her at the station? "

HOME READING



Interesting and funny texts for
comprehension and self-
improving activities

TEXT 1

A BOOK FESTIVAL

People joke that no one in Los Angeles reads; everyone watches TV, rents videos, or goes to the movies. The most popular reading material is comic books, movie magazines, and TV guides. City libraries have only 10 percent of the traffic that car washes have. But how do you explain this? An **annual** book festival in west Los Angeles is "sold out" year after year. People wait half an hour for a parking space **to become available**.

This outdoor festival, sponsored by a newspaper, **occurs** every April for one weekend. This year's **attendance** was **estimated** at 70,000 on Saturday and 75,000 on Sunday. The festival **featured** 280 **exhibitors**. There were about 90 talks given by authors, with an audience question-and-answer period following each talk. Autograph seekers sought out more than 1.50 authors. **A food court sold all kinds of popular and** ethnic foods, from American hamburgers to Hawaiian shave ice drinks. Except for a \$7 **parking** fee, the festival was free. Even so, some people avoided the food **court** prices by **sneaking** in their own sandwiches and drinks.

People came **from all over California**. **One couple drove down from** San Francisco. "This is our sixth year here now. We love it," said the husband. "It's just fantastic to be in the great outdoors, to be among so many books and authors, and to get some very good deals, too."

The idea for the festival occurred years ago, but nobody knew if it would succeed. Although book festivals were already popular in other US cities, would Los Angeles residents embrace one? "Angelenos are very unpredictable," said one of the festival founders.

1. Learn the words given below. Recall the situations from the text in which they are used.

annual
embrace
seeker
featured
parking fee

attendance
estimate
sneak
exhibitors.

available
occur
food court
outdoors

2. Finish the sentences from the text and put them in the logical order

1. The idea for the festival occurred _____.
2. "It's just fantastic to sell _____.
3. The most popular reading _____.
4. This outdoor festival, sponsored _____.

3. Are the following sentences true or false?

1. People joke that no one in Los Angeles reads.
2. TV guides are more popular than books in LA.
3. The book festival is in west LA a yearly event.
4. People have to wait for hours to find a parking space.
5. The annual book festival is held inside a big convention center.
6. The book festival is sponsored by a national magazine.
7. The book festival occurs every spring.
8. There were about 70,000 people at this year's book festival.

4. Fill in the blanks with the words from the text.

People joke that no one in Los Angeles _____; everyone watches TV, rents videos, or goes to movies. The most popular reading material is comic I _____, movie magazines, and TV guides. City libraries have _____ 10 percent of the traffic that car washes _____. But how do you explain this? An annual _____ festival in west Los Angeles is "sold out" _____ after year. People wait half an hour for _____ parking space to become available.

This outdoor festival, _____ estimated at 70,000 on _____ and 75,000 on Sunday. The festival featured 280 _____. There were about 90 talks given by authors, _____ an audience question-and-answer period following each talk. Autograph _____ sought out more than 150 authors. A food I sold all kinds of popular and ethnic foods, American hamburgers to Hawaiian shave ice drinks. Except _____ a \$7 parking fee, the festival was free so, some people avoided the food court prices _____ sneaking in their own sandwiches and drinks.

People _____ from all over California. One couple drove down San Francisco. "This is our sixth year here _____. We love it," said die husband. "It's just _____ to be in the great outdoors, to be _____ so many books and authors, and to get _____ very good deals, too."

The idea for the _____ occurred years ago, but nobody knew if it succeed. Although book festivals were already popular in _____ US cities, would Los Angeles residents embrace one? "_____ are very unpredictable," said one of the festival _____.

5. Give the literal translation of this passage: People joke that no one in Los Angeles ... sneaking in their own sandwiches and drinks.

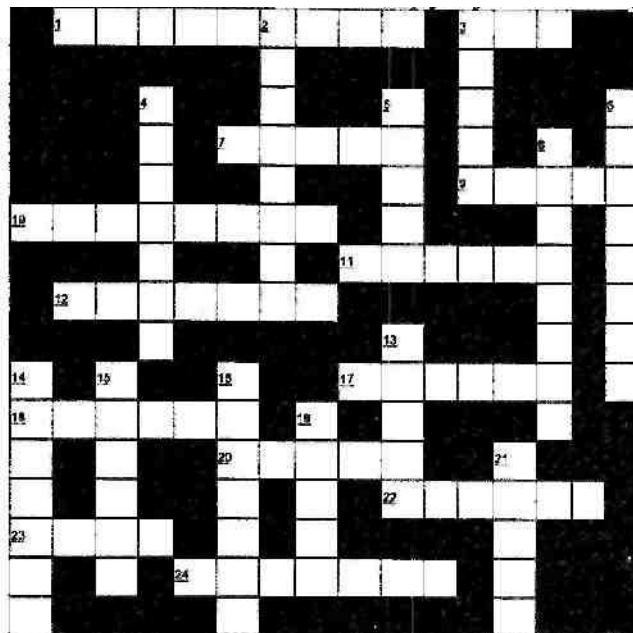
6. Answer the following questions:

1. What does everyone do in Los Angeles?
2. What's the most popular reading material in Los Angeles?
3. What area of Los Angeles does the book festival occur in?
4. How often does the book festival take place?
5. How long do people wait for a parking space?
6. How long does the book festival last?
7. Who sponsors the book festival?
8. What season of the year do people go to the book festival?
9. What followed the talks given by authors?

7. Ask special questions beginning with the words in brackets:

1. About 145,000 people attended this year's festival.(How many)
2. The festival featured 280 exhibitors.(How many)
3. The autograph seekers wanted autographs.(What)
4. They sold food and drinks in the food court. (Where)
5. Parking was \$7.(How much)
6. People came from all over California.(Where)
7. The couple was from San Francisco.(Where)
8. The authors gave about 90 talks.(How many)

8. Do this crossword using the clues to help you find the missing words.



Across:

1. The New York Times is a well-known _____, read by people all over the world.

Down:

2. The _____ clapped and cheered when the orchestra finished playing.

3. If your vehicle is dirty, you should take it to a ____ wash to get it cleaned.
7. Sometimes your ____ sense tells you that someone is looking at you or that you've been here before. (Of course, if you've been here before, you know the answer.)
9. The king and his. The queen and her ____ Martina Navratilova was the queen of the ____.
10. ____ wants to be happy. No one wants to be unhappy.
11. A ____ is the name of the punctuation mark at the end of this sentence. Start all your sentences with a capital letter and end them with a punctuation mark.
12. If at first you don't ____, try, try again. That's called perseverance.
17. The ____ of a book spent a lot of time writing it.
18. ____ who need ____ are the luckiest ____ in the world' is part of a song made: famous by Barbara Streisand.
20. If you are driving on bad roads, try to, ____ all the potholes. If, you hit one, it might damage your car.
22. China has many ____ groups, like, the Miao, who have their own customs and traditions;
23. If you ____ peace, you might find it. Well, you might find it somewhere.
24. A fortune-teller will ____ your future. (I ____ that you are going to waste your money by visiting me.)
3. Kids, and grownups too, enjoy reading ____ books like 'Superman' and 'Wonder Woman'.
4. Laura told Mike that he could ____ her but not kiss her. He got a hug, but no kiss.
5. 'A close ____ ' means that you almost had some misfortune, but you escaped unharmed.
6. A comedian must have good ____ if he is going to make his audience laugh. His jokes had better be good.
8. There's nothing like taking a hike in the great ____.
13. If you are going to climb Mt. Everest. you should hire a Sherpa ____ who knows the way.
14. Corporations ____ TV programs. TV commercials are paid for by the ____ s.
15. People like to go to the ____ and enjoy a good flick, often with popcorn, candy, and a soft drink.
16. At the movies, you might have to watch a lot of commercials and previews before you see the main ____.
19. George Washington was one of our country's ____ing fathers. A building needs a solid ____ation.
21. A burglar will try to ____ into your home and then ____ away with your jewelry. He will wear ____ers so you can't hear him.

TEXT 2

THE PRINCE'S VALENTINE

Once upon a time there was a little Prince, and he wanted to give a valentine to a little Princess who lived in a neighboring kingdom. She was a very beautiful little Princess indeed, for her smile was as bright as her golden hair, and her love for her subjects was as deep as the blue of her eyes.

"What kind of a valentine shall I get for the Princess?" the Prince asked.

"A heart, your Highness; nothing but a heart will do!" said the Court Wise Man.

"A beautiful heart, your Highness; nothing but a beautiful heart will do!" said the Court Ladies.

"A priceless heart, your Highness; nothing but a priceless heart will do!" said the Court Chancellor.

So the Prince started out to get a heart valentine for the little Princess that would be both beautiful and beyond price, and he did not know where to find it.

Before long, though, he came to a jeweller's shop that was full of pretty, costly things to wear. There were pins, and bracelets, and necklaces made of silver and gold, and set with rubies, and sapphires, and emeralds, and diamonds.

"This is the place to find a valentine for the little Princess," thought the Prince, and he selected a diamond heart hung on a gold chain as thin as a thread for the little Princess to wear about her neck.

The Prince gave the jeweller his bag of gold and started out of the shop with the diamond heart in his hand. But he stopped at the door, looking at the heart. It was dull, and no longer shining. What was the matter with it, he wondered. Then he remembered. It was not the right valentine for the little

Princess because it had been bought with his bag of gold. So the Prince gave, the diamond heart back to the jeweller, and went on again.

After the Prince had gone quite a distance he came to a pastry shop. It was full of delicious things to eat, jam tarts, and little strawberry pies, thickly frosted cakes, and plum buns. In the window of the pastry shop was a huge cake baked in the shape of a heart. It was rich with sugar and spices, and the icing on the top was almost as thick as the cake itself.

"This is the place- to find the valentine for the little Princess!" thought the Prince, and he pointed to the great heart cake in the window. "How much must!

pay for that cake?" he asked of the pastry cook.

"Oh, you could not buy that cake!" the pastry cook replied. "I made it as a decoration for the shop for Valentine's Day. But I will give it to you, your Highness."

So the -Prince thanked the pastry cook, and started out of the shop with the great cake in his arms.

"This must surely be the valentine for the little Princess, because I could not buy it," he thought.

Then the Prince almost dropped the cake. It had suddenly grown too heavy for him to carry. What was the matter with the rich, huge cake, he wondered. Then he remembered. It was not the right valentine for the little Princess because something rich to eat is not beautiful. So the Prince gave the cake back to the pastry cook, and went on again.

Now he went a long, long way, and he came to a bird seller beside the road. He had little gold birds, and bright-colored ones in green basket cages. They were all singing as if their throats would burst, but the Prince could hear one soft note above the others, because it was so clear and sweet. It was the cooing of a little dove who sat in her cage apart from the others. The Prince thought he had never seen such a beautiful little dove, as white as snow, and with rose red feet.

"Why does she sing so much more sweetly than the others?" the Prince asked, pointing to the little white dove.

The bird seller smiled.

"She sings because of her heart," he said. "The other birds sing in the sunshine, but look"—he held up the dove's cage, and the Prince saw that the little white dove had closed, blind eyes. "She sings in the dark because of her happy heart," the bird seller said.

"May I buy her," the Prince asked, "to give as a valentine to a little Princess?"

"Oh, I will give her to you," the bird seller said. "Very few people want to take care of a blind bird."

But the little Princess did. She liked the white dove better than any of her other valentines. She hung her cage in a pink rose tree in the sunniest part of the garden, and she often invited the Prince to sit with her under the tree and listen to the dove's sweet song.

1. Learn the words and phrases given below .Recall the situations from the text in which they are used:

the Court	a necklace	to be set with rubies, and
delicious	a plum bun	sapphires, and emeralds,
blind	a cage	and diamonds.
to wonder	to drop	a pastry cook
a throat	a dove	

2. Whose words are these? Under what circumstances were they said?

"Very few people want to take care of a blind bird."

"I made it as a decoration for the shop for Valentine's Day. But I will give it to you, your Highness."

"A beautiful heart, your Highness; nothing but a beautiful heart will do!"

"This must surely be the valentine for the little Princess, because I could not buy it."

"Why does she sing so much more sweetly than the others?"

3. Make a plan to the text. Retell the story according to your plan.

4. Give the literal translation of the passage:

"She sings because of her heart," he said. "The other birds sing in the sunshine, but look" – he held up the dove's cage, and the Prince saw that the little white dove had closed, blind eyes. "She sings in the dark because of her happy heart," the bird seller said.

"May I buy her," the Prince asked, "to give as a valentine to a little Princess?"

"Oh, I will give her to you," the bird seller said. "Very few people want to take care of a blind bird."

But the little Princess did. She liked the white dove better than any of her other valentines. She hung her cage in a pink rose tree in the sunniest part of the garden, and she often invited the Prince to sit with her under the tree and listen to the dove's sweet song.

5. Finish the sentences and arrange them in the logical order:

So the Prince started out

The little Princess liked.

The Prince gave the jeweller.

"She sings in the dark

She hung her cage in

6. Rewrite the sentences in indirect speech:

"What kind of a valentine shall I get for the Princess?" the Prince asked.

"This is the place to find the valentine for the little Princess!" thought the Prince.

"Why does she sing so much more sweetly than the others?" the Prince asked, pointing to the little white dove.

TEXT 3

STUCK IN THE DESERT

Three years ago on the last day of January, I had a big problem. I can't forget this day forever. The story began when my uncle, my cousin, and I went to the desert. My uncle was the oldest at 72 years old, but he was still strong. My cousin at that time was 10 years old, and I was 25 years old. All of us liked hunting. Usually we went hunting on the weekend, especially in winter, because winter is the hunting season.

On the 25th of January, we decided to go hunting. All things were ready in the car, a Range Rover with four-wheel drive. We began on Thursday afternoon, and it took us three hours by car. We reached the place we were looking for at 5:15 P.M. First, we fixed the tent, then we made coffee and had a few minutes of rest. After that, we left to go on the hunt. We hunted using a falcon. Often, we hunt birds and rabbits. We spent two hours without finding anything. We decided to go back to the camp. On our way back, my cousin saw a rabbit. He cried, "Rabbit!! Rabbit! Quick!" I took the falcon's head cover and flung it off aggressively. When the rabbit saw the falcon, it ran fast, but my falcon was a professional hunter. He flew up and came down to trick the rabbit. After two minutes, the rabbit was caught. We took it and went back to the camp where we started to cook our dinner. We ate the delicious food, drank Arabic coffee, and sat around the fire talking until 10:30 P.M. Then we went to bed. We left camp the next day at 7 o'clock in the morning. We went north and found two kinds of birds and caught them. However, we faced trouble at 10:00A.M. because the car got stuck in the sand! We spent about three hours trying to pull out the car without any progress. Finally, we decided to walk. I talked with my uncle about how hard it is for an old man or a young boy to walk more than 40 km. in the desert. He agreed with me. So I took a bottle of water with me and started to walk south alone. I knew the way well, but it was a long way in the sand. I walked more than four hours without stopping. I felt tired and thirsty. I drank all the water which was in the bottle. I stopped to rest, sleeping around two hours.

When I got up, darkness had covered the area. "What should I do?" I asked myself. I continued to walk south. I was worried about my uncle and cousin, and they were worried about me also. Suddenly, I met a Bedouin man who was riding his camel. He took me to his house. When I had had enough rest, I asked him to

take me to the road and he did. After that, I found a car which took me to the city to get help. I had one day to get back to my uncle and cousin. When I got back to them, they were so happy because I had gotten help and they were able to see me again.

Eventually, I learned a lesson from this story, which was that the desert is very dangerous. Next time, when we go hunting we must go in groups with two or more cars. If we go together, we can keep each other safe. We know the desert is dangerous, but we will never quit hunting.

1. Learn the words and phrases given below .Recall the situations from the text in which they are used. Make your own examples:

a falcon	to trick the rabbit	to pull out the car
to feet tired and thirsty	to cover the area.	to be worried about smth.
eventually	to quit doing smth	to keep each other safe

2. Choose the correct variant:

1. Which of the following is NOT true?

- Saeed's uncle was over 70 years old.
- Saeed was younger than his uncle and his cousin.
- Three males went hunting.
- Winter is the hunting season, so they went hunting in January
- Saeed's uncle was an old, but strong man.

2. Choose the correct answer.

- The Range Rover had front-wheel drive.
- The group left for the hunting trip at 2:15 P.M.
- After resting, they fixed their tent.
- During the first two hours, the group found animals to hunt.
- The rabbit tricked the falcon.

3. Which happened last?

- On their way back to camp, Saeed's cousin saw a rabbit.
- The group sat around the fire talking.
- They ate delicious food and drank Arabic coffee.
- The falcon flew up and down and caught the rabbit.
- Saeed took off the falcon's head cover.

4. Which is NOT a reason that Saeed had to walk forty km?
- The car got stuck in the sand.
 - It was hard for an old man or a very young boy to walk 40 km.
 - Saeed did not know the way and he became lost.
 - The group spent 3 hours trying to pull the car out of the sand, but could not.
 - There was nobody around who could help the hunters get out of the sand.
5. Which is NOT true about the Bedouin man?
- He was riding a camel.
 - He took Saeed to get help.
 - He took Saeed to his house.
 - He allowed Saeed to rest.
 - He took Saeed to the road.
6. What lesson did Saeed learn from his experience?
- Hunting is dangerous and he will not hunt again.
 - When hunting, Saeed will use a different type of car.
 - When hunting in the desert, people should go in groups with two or more cars.
 - Bedouins are not helpful to strangers in the desert.
7. What is the main idea of the story?
- You must train a falcon well to hunt in the desert.
 - Saeed loved his family and loved to go hunting with them.
 - Because their car got stuck in the sand, the hunters learned that the desert can be dangerous.

3. Rearrange words in the correct order:

falcon fast it rabbit ran saw the the when
about car hours out pull spent the three to trying we
Bedouin a camel his I man met riding suddenly was who

4. Fill in the gaps with the necessary words given below:

On the 25th of January, we decided to go hunting. All things _____ ready in the car, a Range Rover with four-wheel drive. _____ began on Thursday afternoon, and took us _____ hours by car. We reached the place we were looking for _____ 5:15 p.m. First, we _____ the tent, then we made _____ and had a few minutes of _____. After _____, we left to go on _____ hunt. We hunted using a _____. Often, we hunt birds and rabbits. We spent two _____ without finding anything. We decided _____ go back to the camp. On

our way back, my _____ saw a rabbit. He cried, "Rabbit!! Rabbit! Quick!" I took the falcon's _____ cover and flung it off _____. When the rabbit _____ the falcon, it ran fast, _____ my falcon was a professional hunter. He _____ up and came down to trick the _____. .After two _____, the rabbit was caught. We _____ it and went _____ to the camp where we started to cook _____ dinner. We ate the _____ food, _____ Arabic coffee, and sat around the fire talking _____ 10:30 p.m. Then we went to bed.

aggressively	at	back	but	coffee
cousin	delicious	drank	falcon	fixed
flew	head	hours	minutes	our
rabbit	rest	saw	that	the
three	to	took	until	We
were				

5. Match two columns:

This person was strong for his age.

This person first saw a rabbit.

Saeed walked this long before sleeping.

The group hunted happily for this many hours before trouble came.

This is how long Saeed slept after walking many kms in the desert.

The group probably slept about this many hours the first night of cam ping.

Saeed had this long to get back from the city to his uncle and cousin.

Saeed's cousin
Three hours
Four hours
Saeed's uncle
One day
Two hours
Eight hours

6. Give the literal translation of the passage:

When I got up, darkness _____ but we will never quit hunting.

TEXT 4

FOOTBALL

The full official name of "soccer" (as it is called in the USA and sometimes in Britain) is "association football". This distinguishes it from other kinds such as rugby football (almost always simply called "rugby"), Gaelic football, Australian football and American football. However, most people in Britain call it simply football. This is indicative of its dominant role. Everywhere in the country except south Wales, it is easily the most popular spectator sport, the most-played sport in the country's state schools and one of the most popular participatory sports for adults. In terms of numbers, football, not cricket, is the national sport, just as it is everywhere in Europe.

British football has traditionally drawn its main following from the working class. In general, the intelligentsia ignored it. But in the last two decades of the twentieth century, it has started to attract wider interests. The appearance of fanzines is an indication of it. Fanzines are magazines written and published by the fans of one of the clubs. Light-hearted football programs have appeared on TV. There has also been much academic interest. At the 1990 World Cup there was a joke among English fans that it was impossible to find a hotel room because they had all been taken by sociologists!

Many team sports in Britain tend to be men-only. In the USA, the whole family goes to watch the baseball. Similarly, the whole family goes to cheer the Irish National football team. But in Britain, only a handful of children and women go to football matches. That is probably the reason for worse behaviour of British fans visiting Europe than the fans of many other countries.

1. Перекладіть слова на українську мову та впишіть транскрипцію:

- | | |
|-------------------|-------|
| soccer – | _____ |
| to distinguish – | _____ |
| dominant role – | _____ |
| spectator sport – | _____ |
| adult – | _____ |
| in terms of – | _____ |
| to ignore – | _____ |
| to attract – | _____ |
| appearance – | _____ |
| indication – | _____ |

to publish – _____
World Cup – _____
joke – _____
to cheer – _____
reason for – _____
behaviour – _____

2. Проаналізувавши зміст тексту, напишіть, котре з нижче наведених тверджень є правильне (true), а котре – неправильне (false):

1. Most people in Britain call soccer association football. _____
2. Football is the most popular participatory sport for adults. _____
3. The appearance of fanzines is the indication of the football official name. _____
4. The whole families go to football matches to cheer for the team. _____
5. Social aspects of football are discussed in magazines. _____

3. Виберіть правильну відповідь на запитання до тексту:

1. What is the full official name of "soccer"?
 - a) association football
 - b) soccer
 - c) rugby
 - d) cricket
2. Is it the most popular spectator sport in South Wales?
 - a) Yes, of course
 - b) Only in some towns and villages
 - c) everywhere
 - d) everywhere in the country except South Wales
3. What are fanzines?
 - a) football fans
 - b) fan clubs
 - c) are magazines written and published by the fans
 - d) association football
4. What kind of a joke was there among English fans at the 1990 World Cup?
 - a) football is not for women and children
 - b) it was impossible to find a hotel room because they had all been taken by sociologists
 - c) there was no food left in the city
 - d) our team will never lose
5. Do almost all women and children go to see football matches in Britain?
 - a) only a handful of children and women go
 - b) yes, they go
 - c) both men and women go there
 - d) only men go

4. Поставте речення у правильному порядку:

- a) Many team sports in Britain tend to be men-only.
- b) British football has traditionally drawn its main following from the working class.
- c) Light-hearted football programs have appeared on TV.
- d) However, most people in Britain call it simply football.
- e) The full official name of "soccer" is "association football".

5. Виберіть правильне продовження речення:

1. This distinguishes it from _____
 - a) other kinds of sport
 - b) our football fan club
 - c) women's sports
 - d) foreign football matches
2. British football has traditionally drawn its main following from _____
 - a) American football
 - b) the intelligentsia
 - c) the working class
 - d) Australian rugby
3. In general, the intelligentsia _____
 - a) ignored it
 - b) visited it mostly
 - c) published fans magazines
 - d) supported teams financially
4. Many team sports in Britain tend to be _____
 - a) men-only
 - b) for adults
 - c) for the whole families
 - d) for boys and girls
5. In the USA the whole family goes _____
 - a) to cheer favourite teams in Australia
 - b) to cheer the Irish National football team
 - c) to watch the baseball
 - d) to see rugby

6. Виразно прочитайте та літературно перекладіть уривок:

The full official name of "soccer" (as it is called in the USA and sometimes in Britain) is "association football". ... Fanzines are magazines written and published by the fans of one of the clubs.

7. Висловіть свою думку (до 10 речень) з приводу:

Everywhere in the world football is the most popular spectator sport, the most-played sport in schools and one of the most popular participatory sports for both the youth and adults.

TEXT 5

DANCING WITH THE DEVIL

The girl hurried from her schoolwork as fast as she could. It was the night of a high school dance, along about 70 years ago in the town of Kingsville, Taxes. The girl was very excited about the dance. She bought a brand new sparkly red dress. She knew she looked smashing in it. It was going to be the best evening in her life. Then her mother came in the house, looking pale and determined. "You are not going to that dance?" her mother said. "But why?" asked the daughter. "I've just been talking to the preacher. He says the dance is going to be for the devil. You are absolutely forbidden to go," her mother said.

The girl nodded as if she accepted her mother's words. But she was determined to go for the dance. As soon as her mother was busy, she put on her brand new red dress, and ran down to the K.C. Hall, where the dance was being held. As soon as she walked into the room, all the guys turned to look at her. She was startled by all the attention. Normally no one noticed her. Her mother sometimes accused her of being too awkward to get a boyfriend. But she was not awkward that night. The boys in her class were fighting with each other to dance with her.

Later she broke away from the crowd and went to the table to get some punch to drink. She heard ; a sudden hush. The music stopped. When she turned she saw a handsome man with black, hair and clothes standing next to her. "Dance with me," he said. She managed to say a "yes", completely stunned by this gorgeous man. He led her out on the dance floor. The music sprang out at once. She found herself dancing better than she had ever danced before. They were the centre of attention. Then the man spun her around and around. She gasped for breath, trying to step out of the spin. But he danced faster and faster. Her feet felt hot. The floor seemed to melt under her. They were dancing so fast that a cloud of dust flew up around them both so they were hidden from the crowd. When the dust settled, the girl was gone. The man in black waved once, to the crowd and disappeared. The devil had come to his party and he had taken the girl to the hell.

1. Перекладіть слова на українську мову та напишіть транскрипцію:

To be excited about – _____
brand new – _____
to look smashing – _____

to determine –	_____
preacher –	_____
to forbid –	_____
to be startled by –	_____
awkward –	_____
hush –	_____
handsome –	_____
gorgeous –	_____
to melt –	_____
a cloud of dust –	_____
to disappear –	_____

2. Проаналізувавши зміст тексту, напишіть, котре з нижче приведених тверджень є правильне (true), а котре – неправильне (false):

1. The girl was very modest and tidy so she bought a simple red dress. _____
2. The mother asked her daughter not to go to the dancing as she knew' that it was the party for the devil. _____
3. The girl looked awkward at the dance. _____
4. At the drink she saw a handsome man in white clothes. _____
5. The man and the girl danced very slowly and later both disappeared. _____

3. Виберіть правильну відповідь на запитання до тексту:

1. Why was the girl very excited that evening?
 - a) she had a party at home
 - b) it was a hard day at school
 - c) it was the night of a high school dance
 - d) Her mother was angry
2. Why did her mother look pale and determined?
 - a) she didn't like her daughter's dress
 - b) she was afraid to stay alone
 - c) the preacher said the dance was going to be for the devil
 - d) she didn't like that dance
3. Why did all the guys turn to look at her?
 - a) she was too awkward
 - b) she looked smashing
 - c) she danced very well
 - d) they were just curious
4. What happened when she broke away from the crowd and went to the table to get some punch?
 - a) she decided to sit for some time
 - b) she met her girlfriends
 - c) she heard a sudden hush
 - d) somebody brought her a drink
5. What very strange happened after the dance with the unfamiliar

man?

- a) the man in black waved to the crowd and they disappeared
- b) the girl looked happy
- c) the man went into the crowd
- d) the music stopped

4. Поставте речення у правильному порядку:

- a) She bought a brand new sparkly red dress.
- b) She was startled by all the attention.
- c) It was the night of a high school dance.
- d) They were the centre of attention.
- e) When she turned she saw a handsome man with black hair and clothes standing next to her.

5. Виберіть правильне продовження речення:

- 1. Then her mother came in the house _____
 - a) and was busy cooking supper
 - b) looking pale and determined
 - c) and told strange facts to the daughter
 - d) and saw her daughter in a brand new dress
- 2. As soon as her mother was busy _____
 - a) she put on her brand new red dress, and ran down to the K.C.
 - b) the girl took the money and ran down to the K.C.
 - c) someone knocked at the door
 - d) a handsome man opened the door
- 3. The boys in her class _____
 - a) thought her awkward
 - b) stood up to look at her
 - c) were fighting with each other to dance with her
 - d) were very surprised
- 4. When she turned _____
 - a) she saw her mother at the doorway
 - b) the waiter was bringing her punch
 - c) her man was dancing with another girl
 - d) she saw a handsome man with black hair and clothes
- 5. She found herself _____
 - a) breathing heavily
 - b) dancing better than she had ever danced before
 - c) in the middle of the crowd
 - d) very happy

6. Виразно прочитайте та літературно перекладіть уривок:

The girl hurried from her schoolwork as fast as she could. ... The boys in her class were fighting with each other to dance with her.

7. Висловіть свою думку (до 10 речень) з приводу:

The devil had come to his party and he had taken the girl to the hell.

TEXT 6

THREE BLONDE COPS

A policeman was drilling 3 blondes who were going to become detectives. To test their skills to recognize a suspect, he shows the first blonde a picture for 5 seconds and then hides it. "This is your suspect, how would you recognize him?" the first blonde answers: "That's easy, we'll catch him fast because he has only one eye." The policeman says: "Well, Hm ... that's because the picture shows the profile". Slightly flustered by the answer, he shows the picture to the second blonde for 5 seconds and asks her, "This is your suspect, how would you recognize him?" The second blonde giggles, flips her hair and says: "Ha! He'd be easy to catch because he has only one ear!" the policeman angrily responds: "What's the matter with you two? Of course only one eye and one ear is shown because it is a picture of his profile! Is that the best answer you can come up with?" extremely frustrated at this point he shows the picture to the third blonde and in a very testy voice he asks her: "This is your suspect, how would you recognize him?" He adds quickly, "think hard before giving a stupid answer". The blonde looks at the picture for a moment and says: "Hmmm, the suspect is wearing contact lenses." The policeman is surprised and speechless, because he really does not know himself if the suspect wears contact lenses or not. "Well, that is a good answer. Wait here for a few minutes while I check his file and I'll get back to you". He leaves the room and goes to his office, checks the suspect's file in his computer and comes back with a beaming smile on his face. "Wow! I can't believe it ...it's true!!! The suspect really wears contact lenses. Good work! How were you able to make such an important observation?"

"That's easy! The third blonde replied. "He can't wear glasses because he has only one eye and one ear".

1. Перекладіть слова на українську мову та напишіть транскрипцію:

- to drill – _____
- detective – _____
- skill – _____
- to recognize – _____
- suspect – _____
- to hide – _____
- to be flustered – _____

to giggle –	_____
to flip –	_____
to response –	_____
extremely –	_____
to add –	_____
quickly –	_____
stupid –	_____
contact lenses –	_____
to be surprised –	_____
to be speechless –	_____
to check –	_____

2. Проаналізувавши зміст тексту, напишіть, котре з нижче приведених тверджень є правильне (true), а котре – неправильне (false):

1. A policeman was drilling 3 blondes who were going to become police officers. _____
2. To test their skills to recognize a suspect, he shows the blondes a print copy for 5 seconds and than hides it. _____
3. The second blonde answered that the suspect had one eye. _____
4. The third blonde said that the suspect wore contact lenses. _____
5. It was true that the suspect wore contact lenses. _____

3. Виберіть правильну відповідь на запитання до тексту:

1. Why was a policeman drilling 3 blondes?
 - a) because they were going to become detectives
 - b) they were suspects
 - c) he wanted their help in one case
 - d) he was a chief officer
2. Which was the first blonde's answer?
 - a) because he has only one eye
 - b) because he has only one ear
 - c) because he has one nose
 - d) the suspect is wearing contact lenses
3. Which was the third blonde's answer?
 - a) because he has only one eye
 - b) because he has only one ear
 - c) because he has one nose
 - d) the suspect is wearing contact lenses
4. Did the officer know if the suspect really wore contact lenses?
 - a) Yes, he did
 - b) No, he didn't
 - c) He was sure the suspect did
 - d) All knew it
5. How did the officer check the information about contact lenses?
 - a) in the suspect's file in his computer'
 - b) he asked the first blonde

- c) he asked the second blonde
- d) he checked the suspect's medical card

4. Поставте речення у правильному порядку:

- a) Slightly flustered by the answer, he shows the picture to the second blonde for 5 seconds.
- b) To test their skills to recognize a suspect, he shows the first blonde a picture for 5 seconds and then hides it.
- c) The suspect really wears contact lenses.
- d) The policeman is surprised and speechless.
- e) How were you able to make such an important observation?

5. Виберіть правильне продовження речення:

1. To test their skills to recognize a suspect _____
 - a) he told them his method of work
 - b) he shows his picture for 5 seconds and then hides it
 - c) the blondes spent 5 minutes with the suspect
 - d) the suspect gave them his picture and hid it
2. Extremely frustrated at this point _____
 - a) he shows the picture to the third blonde and in a very testy voice says
 - b) he leaves the room speechless
 - c) he went to check the file
 - d) the blonde answered the question
3. The policeman is surprised and speechless _____
 - a) because the blonde looked smashing
 - b) because the blonde gave the stupid answer again
 - c) because he really does not know himself if the suspect wears contact lenses
 - d) because the blonde recognized the suspect
4. He leaves the room and goes to his office, checks the suspect's file in his computer and _____
 - a) decides to stop the test drilling
 - b) sees that the blonde is wrong
 - c) comes back with an angry face
 - d) comes back with a beaming smile on his face
5. He can't wear glasses because _____
 - a) he is blind
 - b) he doesn't like them
 - c) he has only one eye and one ear
 - d) he has no money

6. Виразно прочитайте та літературно перекладіть уривок:

"What's the matter with you two? ... How were you able to make such an important observation?"

7. Висловіть свою думку (до 10 речень) з приводу:

The blondes always give stupid answers.

TEXT 7

THE POWER OF IMAGINATION

Mr. Brown got to the hotel late at night after a long journey. He asked a hall porter whether there were any vacant rooms in the hotel. At that moment another traveller came to the hotel and asked the porter for a room too. The only vacant room was a double room, that is a room with two beds in it.

"Would you mind spending the night in the same room together?" the hall porter asked. "It will be less expensive for you, each of you will pay half."

At first the travellers didn't like the idea, but just then it began raining hard, and they were too tired to go to another hotel, so they changed their minds. They spoke to each other and then told the porter that they agreed to spend the night at the same room. Their things were carried in, and soon the two men went to sleep to the accompaniment of the rain. Suddenly Mr. Brown was woken up by a loud noise. It was quite dark.

"What's the matter?" Mr. Brown asked in surprise. "Is anything the matter?"

In a weak voice the second traveller answered: "I'm sorry but I had to wake you up. I've got asthma and I feel very bad. In addition I've got a terrible headache, if you don't want me to die, open the window, quickly."

Mr. Brown jumped out of bed and began looking for his matches but he couldn't find them in the dark, and the sick man went on moaning, "Air, air...I want fresh air. I'm dying". Mr. Brown still couldn't find the matches, so he tried to find the window. It took him some time and at last he thought he had found it. But he was unable to open it. As the voice of the man grew weaker and weaker, Mr. Brown in horror took a chair and broke the window with it. The sick man immediately stopped moaning and said that he was very grateful and felt much better. Then the two of them slept peacefully until the morning.

When they woke up next morning they were surprised to see that the only window in the room was still closed but the large looking-glass was broken to pieces.

1. Перекладіть слова на українську мову та впишіть транскрипцію:

journey –	_____
porter –	_____
double room –	_____
to mind –	_____
expensive –	_____
to change one's mind –	_____

the same –	_____
accompaniment –	_____
noise –	_____
weak –	_____
asthma –	_____
in addition –	_____
headache –	_____
match –	_____
sick –	_____
horror –	_____
grateful –	_____
peacefully –	_____
looking-glass –	_____
to break to pieces –	_____

2. Проаналізувавши зміст тексту, напишіть, котре з нижче приведених тверджень є правильне (true), а котре – неправильне (false):

- Both travellers agreed to stay at the same room at once. _____
- Mr. Brown was woken up by hard rain. . _____
- Mr. Brown couldn't find his matches so he broke the window with a lamp.

- The sick man was very grateful to Mr. Brown for help. . _____
- When they woke up next morning they saw that the only window was broken to pieces. _____

3. Виберіть правильну відповідь на запитання до тексту:

- Were there any vacant rooms in the hotel?
 - yes, there were some
 - no, there were not any
 - only a double room was vacant
 - a family room was
- Why did the travelers change their minds?
 - the room was very good
 - they liked the idea
 - because it began raining hard, and they were too tired to go to another hotel
 - there were not any hotels there
- What was Mr. Brown woken up by?
 - a loud noise
 - the other traveler
 - the rain
 - a knock at the door
- What did the traveler ask his companion to do?
 - to give him matches
 - to open the window
 - to buy him some pills for his headache

- d)to get him some pills for asthma
5. What were they surprised to see in the morning?
- a)the rain had stopped
 - b)the looking-glass was broken to pieces
 - c)the only window was broken to pieces
 - d)the door was open

4. Поставте речення у правильному порядку:

- a)Mr. Brown still couldn't find the matches, so he tried to find the window.
- b)He asked a hall porter whether there were any vacant rooms in the hotel.
- c)Then the two of them slept peacefully until the morning.
- d)It was quite dark.
- e)It took him some time and at last he thought he had found it.

5. Виберіть правильне продовження речення:

1. He asked a hall porter_____

 - a)to take his things in
 - b)whether there were any vacant rooms in the hotel
 - c)to find him a better room
 - d)what time is breakfast

2. Their things were carried in_____

 - a)they went to the restaurant to have a meal
 - b)they got acquainted
 - c)they went to the bathroom
 - d)and soon the two men went to sleep to the accompaniment of the rain

3. Mr. Brown jumped out of bed and_____

 - a)began looking for his matches
 - b)came up to the man
 - c)switched on the light
 - d)called the doctor

4. As the voice of the man grew weaker and weaker, Mr. Brown _____

 - a)opened the window
 - b)took a chair and broke the window
 - c)took a lamp and broke the window
 - d)took a chair and broke the looking-glass

5. The sick man immediately stopped moaning_____

 - a)and fell asleep
 - b)asked for some water
 - c)and said that he was very grateful
 - d)became silent

6. Виразно прочитайте та літературно перекладіть уривок:

"What's the matter?" ... Mr. Brown in horror took a chair and broke the window with it.

7. Висловіть свою думку (до 10 речень) з приводу:

Sometimes the power of imagination is unbelievable.

TEXT 8

WITCHES' LOAVES

Miss Martha kept a little bakery at the corner. Two or three times a week a customer came in whom she began to take an interest. He was a middle-aged man and his clothes were worn and darned in places. But he looked neat and had very good manners. He always bought two loaves of stale bread.

Once Miss Martha saw red and brown stains on his fingers. She was sure then that he was very an artist and very poor. Often when Miss Martha sat down to her chops and light rolls and jam and tea, she would sigh and wish that the gentleman-artist might share her tasty meal instead of eating dry crusts.

The customer kept on buying stale bread. She thought he began looking thinner and more discouraged. Miss Martha began to dress better and look after her complexion.

One day the customer came in for his stale loaves. While Miss Martha was reaching for them, a fire-engine came past. He ran to the door to look. Suddenly inspired, Miss Martha seized the opportunity. On the bottom shelf behind the counter there was a pound of fresh butter she had bought ten minutes before. With a bread-knife Miss Martha made a deep slash in each of the stale loaves, put a great quantity of butter inside and pressed them together. When the customer turned once more, she was tying the paper around them. For a long time that day she thought about him and imagined his surprise and pleasure at discovering the butter in the loaves.

Suddenly the front door bell tinkled furiously. Two men were at the door. One was a young man, and the second was her artist. His face was very red and he shouted: "You have ruined me!" His young companion took him by the collar and dragged the man out of the bakery. Then the young man returned to Miss Martha and said, "I must explain, Ma'am. This gentleman's name is Blumberger. He is an architectural draughtsman. He has been working hard for three months drawing a plan for a new city hall. It was a prize competition. He finished inking the lines yesterday. You know a draughtsman always makes his drawing in pencil first. When it's done, he rubs out the pencil lines with handfuls of stale breadcrumbs. That's better than any rubber. This man has always been buying the bread here. Well, today... you know, that butter isn't... well Blumberger's plan isn't good for anything now." Miss Martha went to the back room. She took off her silk blouse and put on the old brown blouse she used to wear.

1. Перекладіть слова на українську мову та впишіть транскрипцію:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------|
| bakery – | _____ |
| customer – | _____ |
| middle-aged – | _____ |
| neat – | _____ |
| loaf – | _____ |
| stale – | _____ |
| stain – | _____ |
| rolls – | _____ |
| to sigh – | _____ |
| dry crusts – | _____ |
| complexion – | _____ |
| fire-engine – | _____ |
| to seize the opportunity – | _____ |
| bottom shelf – | _____ |
| quantity – | _____ |
| to press – | _____ |
| to tie – | _____ |
| furiously – | _____ |
| to ruin – | _____ |
| to drag – | _____ |
| prize competition – | _____ |
| to rub – | _____ |
| rubber – | _____ |
| used to – | _____ |

2. Проаналізувавши зміст тексту, напишіть, котре з нижче приведених тверджень є правильне (true), а котре - неправильне (false):

1. A strange customer usually came to Miss Martha's bakery and bought some stale bread. _____
2. One day Miss Martha felt sorry about the artist and put some butter into his bread. _____
3. Miss Martha wanted to attract the man's attention and be pretty to him. _____
4. Miss Martha spoiled all Blumberger's piece of work. _____
5. Blumberger always used stale bread instead of a rubber. _____

3. Виберіть правильний варіант:

1. She was sure then that he was very an artist and very. _____.
a) poor
b) middle-aged
c) neat
d) intelligent
2. One was a young man, and the second was her. _____.
a) artist

- b)customer c)son
d) neighbour
3. He has been working hard for three months drawing a _____ for a new city hall.
a)plan
b)map
c)picture
d)main building
4. You know a draughtsman always makes his drawing in _____ first.
a)ink
b)pencil
c)butter
d)oil
5. This man has always been buying the _____ here.
a)butter
b)pencils
c)bread
d)rubber

4. Виберіть зайве слово:

- 1)
a) bakery b) bread c) butter d) customer
- 2)
a) interest b) furious c) middle-aged d) neat
- 3)
a) fire-engine b) rolls c) crusts d) loaves of bread
- 4)
a) face b) manners c) fingers d) corner
- 5)
a) thinner b) more discouraged c) better d) dry
- 6)
a) quantity b) brown c) red d) stale
- 7)
a) rubs b) thought c) wish d) sigh
- 8)
a) imagined b) turned c) tinkled d) kept

5. Поставте усі можливі запитання до речення (мінімум 5):

Miss Martha kept a little bakery at the corner.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

TEXT 9

LOST IN THE POST

Jack Ainsley, a post-office sorter, turned the envelope over and over in his hands. The letter was addressed to his wife and had an Australian stamp.

Jack knew that the sender was Dicky Soames, his wife's cousin. It was the second letter Mrs. Ainsley had received since Dicky's departure. The first letter had come six months before Jack burnt that one without reading it. No man ever had less reason for jealousy than Ainsley. His wife Adela was to be trusted: she was a splendid house-keeper and a very good mother to their two children. However, he knew that Dicky Soames had gone away to join his and Adela's uncle years back, it hadn't changed his opinion about their relationship.

He was afraid that some day Dicky would return and take Adela from him. Ainsley did not put the second letter in his pocket as somebody might have seen him do it. At night he came to the post office to get it and got in through the window. Unfortunately when he was getting out he was seen by the post-master. Ainsley did not want to tell the truth - it was too humiliating - and so lost his job. Soon Ainsley discovered that he could not get any other permanent job as people did not trust him now. Life became hard.

One afternoon Ainsley came home and was surprised to see Dicky Soames who hadn't changed a bit. Soames said he was delighted to see Ainsley. "I missed both of you so much," he added with a friendly smile.

"Uncle Tom died," Adela explained, "and Dicky has inherited his money." Then Adela turned to Dicky. "Tell him the rest," she said quietly. "Well, you see," said Dicky, "Uncle Tom left something over sixty thousand pounds and he wished Adela to have half. But he was angry because Adela never answered the two letters I wrote to her from him. So he changed his will and left the thirty thousand pounds, which were Adela's, share to hospitals. Why didn't you answer them, Adela?" Adela looked at her husband. Then she came up to him and took his hand. "The letters must have been lost," she said. At that moment Ainsley realised that Adela knew everything.

1. Перекладіть слова на українську мову та напишіть транскрипцію:

post-office sorter – _____

envelope – _____

stamp –	_____
departure –	_____
reason for –	_____
jealousy –	_____
splendid –	_____
relationship –	_____
humiliating –	_____
permanent job –	_____
to inherit –	_____

2. Проаналізувавши зміст тексту, напишіть, котре з нижче приведених тверджень є правильне (true), а котре – неправильне (false):

1. Dicky Soames from Australia sent a letter to Ainsley's wife. _____
2. This was the second letter that Ainsley didn't want his wife to read it. _____
3. Ainsley lost his job because he was a bad worker. _____
4. Ainsley was not surprised to meet Dicky at the door. _____ -
5. Dicky brought some money from Adela's uncle. _____

3. Виберіть правильний варіант:

- 1) Jack knew that the sender was Dicky Soames, his _____.
 - a) wife's cousin
 - b) cousin
 - c) uncle
 - d) friend
- 2) The first letter had come _____ before Jack burnt that one without reading it.
 - a) six weeks
 - b) six months
 - c) six years
 - d) sixteen months
- 3) Unfortunately when he was getting out he was seen by the _____.
 - a) police officer
 - b) his wife
 - c) post-master
 - d) Dicky Soames
- 4) One afternoon Ainsley came home and was surprised to see _____ who hadn't changed a bit.
 - a) Dicky Soames
 - b) Adela
 - c) Jack Ainsley
 - d) Mrs. Ainsley
- 5) Uncle Tom left something over sixty thousand pounds and he wished Adela

to have _____.

- a) all
- b) half
- c) sixty thousand pounds
- d) six thousand dollars

4. Виберіть зайве слово:

- 1)
a) post-office sorter b) envelope c) letter d) wife
- 2)
a) sender b) wife c) husband d) cousin
- 3)
a) house-keeper b) uncle c) post-master d) post-office sorter
- 4)
a) night b) afternoon c) morning d) soon
- 5)
a) might b) could c) must d) lost
- 6)
a) Adela b) Jack c) Dicky d) Tom
- 7)
a) was b) been c) is d) said
- 8)
a) answered b) knew c) became d) saw

5. Поставте усі можливі запитання до речення (мінімум 5):

Adela never answered the two letters I wrote to her from him.

- 1. _____
- 2. _____
- 3. _____
- 4. _____
- 5. _____
- 7. _____
- 8. _____

TEXT 10

MY FINANCIAL CAREER

My salary had been raised to 50 dollars a month and I felt that (he bank was the only place to save it. So I walked to the bank and asked the clerks whether I could speak to the manager.

"Certainly," said the clerk and called him. The manager was a calm, serious man. While talking to him I held my 56 dollars in my pocket. "Can I see you alone?" asked I.

"Come in here," he said and led the way to a private room. "Sit down, please."

"Well," I began. "I've come to open an account. I intend to keep all my money in this bank".

The manager looked serious, he felt sure now that I was a very rich man. "A large account I suppose", he said.

"Rather a large one", I whispered. "I want to place in this bank the sum of 56 dollars now and 50 dollars a month regularly."

The manager got up and called the clerk. "Mr. Montgomery," he said, "this gentleman is opening an account. He will place 56 dollars in it."

I went up to the clerk and pushed the money to him. When the operation was over, I suddenly remembered that I didn't leave any money for the present use. My idea was to take 6 dollars back. Someone gave me a cheque book and told me how to write it out. I wrote something on it and gave it to the clerk.

"What? Do you understand clearly what you want?" he asked. Then I realized that I had written 56 dollars instead of 6. I was too upset and couldn't explain the thing. One of the clerks prepared to pay me the money.

"How do you want to have it?" he asked.

"Oh," I answered without thinking. - "In 50 dollar notes". He gave me a fifty dollar note.

"And six?" he asked coldly. "In six dollar notes," I replied. He gave me six dollars and I ran out. As the big door closed behind me, I had a sound of laughter. Since then I use a bank no more. I keep my money in my pocket and my savings in a sock.

1. Перекладіть слова на українську мову та запишіть транскрипцію:

- salary – _____
to save – _____
clerk – _____
to open an account – _____
to place in a bank – _____
to push – _____
present use – _____
cheque book – _____
note – _____

2. Проаналізувавши зміст тексту, напишіть, котре з нижче приведених тверджень є правильне (true), а котре – неправильне (false):

1. The man felt that the bank was the only place to save his salary. _____
2. It was the manager who was the first to speak with this client. _____
3. The man wanted to place in this bank the sum of 56 dollars now and 50 dollars a month regularly. _____
4. Then he decided to take all the money because he forgot that he had no money left at home. _____
5. Since then he always kept his money in the bank. _____

3. Виберіть правильний варіант:

1. My salary had been raised to 50 dollars a _____ and I felt that the bank was the only place to save it.
a) week
b) year
c) semester
d) month
2. While talking to him I held my 56 dollars in my _____.
a) hand bag
b) purse
c) pocket
d) hand
3. The manager looked _____, he felt sure now that I was a very rich man.
a) serious
b) determined
c) interested
d) stupid
4. When the operation was over, I suddenly remembered that I didn't leave any money for the _____.
a) present use

- b) present
- c) food
- d) myself

5. I was too _____ and couldn't explain the thing.

- a) frightened
- b) confused
- c) upset
- d) disappointed

4. Виберіть зайве слово:

1)

- a) salary b) wages c) bread d) money

2)

- a) manager b) clerk c) bank officer d) bank

3)

- a) serious b) man c) rich d) upset

4)

- a) leave b) pushed c) walked d) called

5)

- a) coldly b) clearly c) calm d) regularly

6)

- a) spear b) understand c) keep d) write

7)

- a) him b) me c) one d) he

8)

- a) rich man b) calm manager c) large account d) serious clerk

5. Поставте усі можливі запитання до речення (мінімум 5):

I want to place in this bank, the sum of 56 dollars now.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

RECOMMENDED LITERATURE

1. Амамджян Ш. Г. Play and Learn English: Англійська мова у малюнках / Амамджян Ш. Г. – К.: «Грайлик», 1994. – 224 с.: іл.
2. Англійська мова. Збірник тестів для абітурієнтів / [Телегіна Н.І., Тронь О.А., Крижанівська Н. Г. та ін.]. – Івано-Франківськ, 2006.
3. Антонова Г.В. Використання прислів'їв та приказок під час викладання англійської мови / Г.В. Антонова // Англійська мова та література. – 2006. – № 15. – С. 17–23.
4. Артемчук Г. Про сучасні підходи до вивчення і викладання іноземних мов / Г. Артемчук // Рідна мова. – 2003. – № 9. – С. 10–11.
5. Бабенко Т.В. Методика навчання англійської мови у початковій школі / Бабенко Т.В. – К.: Арістей, 2005. – 218 с.
6. Байкова Г.В. Ситуації на уроке англійського язика / Г.В. Байкова // Иностранные языки в школе. – 1991. – №1. – С. 37–41.
7. Бех П. О. Англійська мова: посібник / Бех П. О. – К.: Либідь, 1996.
8. Бігич О.Б. Способи контролю розуміння почутого/прочитаного англійського повідомлення молодшими школярами / О.Б. Бігич // Іноземні мови. – 2001. – № 2. – С. 42–44.
9. Білик О.І. EFL Classroom: Listening comprehension: навч.-метод. посібник / Білик О. І., Пилячик Н. Є., Троценко О. Я. – Івано-Франківськ, 2008.
10. Близнюк О.І. Гумористичні оповідання для навчання аудіюванню / О.І. Близнюк // Іноземні мови. – 1995. – № 3–4. – С. 42–49.
11. Близнюк О.І. Ігри у навчанні іноземних мов: посібник для вчителів / О.І. Близнюк, Л.С. Панова. – К.: Освіта, 1997. – 64 с.
12. Бонк М. А. Учебник англійського язика: в 2-х частях / Бонк М.А., Котий Г.А., Лукьянова Н.А. – Х.: ДеКонт-Торсинг, 1997.
13. Валігура Ольга. English Tests. Test your Knowledge of proverbs and Idioms / Ольга Валігура, Леся Вознюк. – Тернопіль: Підручники і посібники, 2008. – 128 с.

14. Верба Г.В. Граматика сучасної англійської мови: Довідник / Г.В. Верба, Л.Г. Верба – К., 1997.
15. Вишневський О.І. Діяльність учнів на уроці іноземної мови / Вишневський О.І. – К.: Радянська школа, 1989. – 223 с.
16. Вишневський О.І. Довідник учителя іноземної мови / Вишневський О.І. – К.: Радянська школа, 1982. – 152 с.
17. Возна М. О. Англійська мова для перекладачів та філологів / [Возна М.О., Гапонів А.Б., Васильченко О.Ю., Хоменко Н.С.]. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2006.
18. Гапонова С.В. Сучасні методи викладання іноземних мов за рубужем / С.В. Гапонова // Іноземні мови. – 1997. – № 4. – С.24–30.
19. Геращенко В.А. Групова і парна робота на уроках англійської мови / В.А. Геращенко // Англійська мова та література. – 2005. – № 36. – С. 2–3.
20. Гільчук Ю. Творчий підхід до навчання граматики (англійська мова) в початковій школі / Ю. Гільчук // Англійська мова та література. – 2004. – № 4. – С. 7–10.
21. Голімбовська Л.П. Нетрадиційні форми навчання англійської мови / Л.П. Голімбовська // Англійська мова та література. – 2005. – № 35. – С. 2–5.
22. Гринько І. Рольова гра у навчанні діалогічного мовлення / І. Гринько // Англійська мова та література. – 2005. – № 41. – С. 46.
23. Довгаль В.Я. Фонетичні вправи для навчання вимови у середньому навчальному закладі / В.Я. Довгаль // Іноземні мови. – 1996. – № 4. – С. 18–21.
24. Зайковські С. А. Англійська мова. Довідник / С.А. Зайковські, Л.М. Адамовська. – Тернопіль: Навчальна книга – Богдан, 2006.
25. Зимняя И.А. Психологические аспекты обучения говорению на иностранном языке / Зимняя И.А. – М.: Просвещение. – 1985. – 160 с.
26. Зимняя И.А. Психология обучения иностранным языкам в школе / Зимняя И.А. – М.: Просвещение. – 1991. – 220 с.

27. Каверіна В. 100 тем з англійської мови / Каверіна В., Бойко В., Жидких Н. – Донецьк: ВКФ «БАО», 2001.
28. Каменська Надія. Ігрові моменти на уроках англійської мови / Надія Каменська. – Тернопіль: Підручники та посібники, 2008. – 80 с.
29. Каушанская В. Л. Граматика англійського языка: пособие [для студентов педагогических институтов и университетов] / [Каушанская В.Л., Ковнер Р.Л., Кожевникова О.Н., Прокофьева Е.В.]. – 7-е издание. – Москва, 2000.
30. Качалова К. Н. Практическая грамматика англійського языка / К. Н. Качалова, Е.Е. Израилевич – [В 2-х т.] – К.: Методика, 1995.
31. Коломінова О.О. Формування англомовної лексичної компетенції у молодших школярів / О.О. Коломінова // Іноземні мови. – 2005. – № 2. – С. 48–51.
32. Комунікативні методи та матеріали для викладання англійської мови / [перекл. та адаптація Л.В. Биркун]. – Oxford: Oxford University Press. – 1998. – 48 с.
33. Кравченко М.В. Ефективні прийоми навчання англійської мови / М.В. Кравченко // Англійська мова та література. – 2005. – № 3. – С. 5.
34. Кретьова Н. Рольові ігри на уроках англійської мови як ефективний засіб гуманізації навчально-виховного процесу на початковому етапі / Н. Кретьова // Англійська мова та література. – 2005. – № 3. – С. 52–54.
35. Методика викладання іноземних мов у середніх навчальних закладах: підручник / [Вид. 2-е, випр. і перероб./ кол. авторів під кер. С.Ю. Ніколаєвої]. – К.: Ленвіт, 2002. – 328 с.
36. Морська Л.І. Теорія та практика методики навчання англійської мови / Морська Л.І. – Тернопіль: Астон, 2003. – 248 с.
37. Настольная книга преподавателя иностранного языка: справ. пособие / [Маслико Е.А. и др.]. – Мн.: Высш. шк., 1992. – 445 с.
38. Ніколаєва Н.В. Сучасні підходи до викладання іноземних мов / Н.В. Ніколаєва // Іноземні мови. – 2001. – № 1. – С. 50–57.

39. Ніколаєва С.Ю. Концепція підготовки вчителя іноземної мови / С.Ю. Ніколаєва // Іноземні мови. – 1995. – № 3–4. – С. 5–11.
40. Ніколаєва С.Ю. Практикум з методики тестування іншомовної лексичної компетенції (на матеріалі англійської мови) / Ніколаєва С.Ю. – К.: ІЗМН, 1996. – 312 с.
41. Олійник Т.І. Рольова гра у навчання англійської мови / Олійник Т.І. – К.: Освіта. – 1992. – 127 с.
42. Павленко О.П. Особистісно орієнтований підхід у навчанні іноземних мов / О.П. Павленко // Англійська мова та література. – 2006. – № 7. – С. 2–8.
43. Пассов Е. И. Основы методики обучения иностранным языкам / Пассов Е.И. – М.: Просвещение, 1997. – 213 с.
44. Петренко О.П. У пошуках творчих ідей для навчання англійської мови у початковій школі / О.П. Петренко // Іноземні мови. – 2000. – № 4. – С. 43–45.
45. Плахотник В.М. Обучение английскому языку на начальном этапе в средней школе / В.М. Плахотник, Р. Ю. Мартынова. – К.: 1990. – 103 с.
46. Погарська Т. В. Англійська мова. Дидактична мозаїка. 11 клас / Погарська Т. В. – Харків: Веста: Видавництво «Ранок», 2004. – 264 с.
47. Практический курс английского языка. 2 курс / [Аракин В. Д. и др.]. – Москва: ВЛАДОС, 2000.
48. Практична граматики англійської мови з вправами. Посібник для студентів вищих закладів освіти / [Черноватий Л.М. та ін.]. – Том I. – Вінниця: Нова книга, 2006.
49. Практична граматики англійської мови з вправами. Посібник для студентів вищих закладів освіти / [Черноватий Л.М. та ін.]. – Том II. – Вінниця: Нова книга, 2006.
50. Радченко Р.В. Розвиток мовної особистості шляхом використання ігрових форм роботи / Р.В. Радченко // Англійська мова та література. – 2007. – № 9. – С. 57.

51. Рогова Г.В. Методика обучения английскому языку на начальном этапе в средней школе / Г.В. Рогова, И.Н. Верещагина. – М.: Просвещение, 1988. – 223 с.
52. Савченко О.Ю. Игры на уроках английского языка / О.Ю. Савченко // Иностранные языки в школе. – 1992. – № 2. – С. 39–41.
53. Скалкин В.Л. Обучение диалогической речи / Скалкин В.Л. – К.: Рад. шк., 1989. – 158 с.
54. Скалкин В.Л. Обучение монологическому высказыванию: на матер. англ. яз. / Скалкин В.Л. – К.: Рад. шк., 1983. – 118 с.
55. Склярченко Н. К. Навчання граматичних структур англійської мови в школі / Склярченко Н.К. – К.: Рад. шк., 1982. – 103 с.
56. Старков А.П. Обучение английскому языку в средней школе / Старков А.П. – М.: Высш. шк. – 1978.
57. Хоменко Е.Г. Грамматика англійської мови: навч. посібник / Хоменко Е.Г. – [2-ге видання]. – Київ, «Знання-Прес», 2007.
58. Шаповал С. Вивчаємо англійську. Формування інтересу до опанування мови / С. Шаповал // Початкова освіта. – 2004. – № 35. – С. 29.
59. Яковенко Л.І. Рольова гра як активний прийом навчання англійської мови у школі / Л.І. Яковенко // Іноземні мови. – 2006. – № 2. – С. 16.
60. Янсон В. В. A practical guide for learners of English = Практичний курс англійської мови для студентів вищих навчальних закладів: навч. посібник / В.В. Янсон, Л.В. Свистун. – [Книга I, II / англ. мовою]. – Київ ТОВ «ВП Логос», 2003.
61. Ярова О. Сучасні підходи до навчання іноземних мов / О. Ярова // Рідна школа. – 2006. – № 6. – С. 61–63.
62. Abbott G. The teaching of English as an International Language: A Practical Guide / G. Abbott, P. Wingard. – Great Britain, 1985.
63. Anderson A. Listening / A. Anderson, T. Lynch. – Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1988.

64. Baker A. Sheep or Ship? An Intermediate Pronunciation Course / Baker A. – Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1992.
65. Brown G. Listening to Spoken English / Brown G. – [2nd ed.] – London: Longman, 1990.
66. Brumfit Ch. J. Communicative Methodology in Language Teaching / Brumfit Ch. J. – Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990. – 166 p.
67. Carter A. Vocabulary / Carter A. – London: Allen and Unwin, 1987.
68. Chaudron C. Second Language Classrooms / Chaudron C. – Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1988. – 221 p.
69. Conditions for Language Learning. Available: <http://www.sil.org/lingualinks/languagelearning/mangngyrlngglrnnngprgrm/ConditionsForLanguagelearning.htm>
70. Fowler W.S. Quick-check tests / W.S. Fowler, N. Coe. – London: AD. Nelson, 1978.
71. Jonathan Crowthe. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English / Jonathan Crowthe, Kathryn Kavanagh, Michal Ashby. – Oxford University Press.
72. Harmer J. How to Teach English / Harmer J. – Harlow: Longman, 1998.
73. Hartley B. Streamline English / B.Hartley, P.Viney. – Oxford University Press, 1997.
74. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English / [Director Della Summers]. – Harlow: Pearson Education Limited, 2003. – 1949[1] p.
75. Murphy R. English Grammar in USE. A selfstudy reference and practice book for intermediate students / Murphy R. – M. Cambridge University Press. English language Opens Doors Cultural and Business Centre.
76. Parnwell E.C. The New Oxford Picture Dictionary. Rev. ed. Of: Oxford picture dictionary of American English / Parnwell E.C. – Oxford University Press, 1988. – 124 p.
77. Rogova G.V. Methods of teaching English / Rogova G.V. – Moscow: Просвещение. – 1983.

78. Soars J. Headway / Soars J. and L. – Oxford University Press, 1998.
79. The WebQuest Page. Available: <http://edweb.sdsu.edu/wedquest.html>
80. Ur P. Discussions that Work / Ur P. – Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1981.
81. Using the ESL Standards. Available:
82. Watcyn-Jones P. Test Your Vocabulary / Watcyn-Jones P. – London: Penguin Books Ltd., 1988.
83. Webster's new Dictionary: Webster based on "Webster's new international Dictionary" / [edit. A. Merriam at al]. – USA, Springfield, Macs: G&C Merriam.